THE

Gentleman's New Jockey:

OR,

FARRIER'S Approved Guide.

CONTAINING

The exacteſt Rules and Methods for Breeding and Managing HORSES, *&c.* in order to bring them up in the beſt manner, for Profit, Pleaſure, or any kind of Service or Recreation:

Eſpecially in what relates to

Racing or *Running*, *Courſing*, *Travel*, *War*, &c.

With Directions for *Heats*, *Dieting*, *Dreſſing*, and the ſeveral Paces requiſite on any of the like occaſions.

Alſo Approved Receipts, and Remedies for all manner of Diſeaſes, Sorrances, Hurts or Grievances, incident to HORSES, according to the Opinions of the beſt Farriers of all Countries and Ages: With Directions for preventing *Sickneſſes* and *Griefs*, and the *Symptoms* whereby they are known.

To which is added a Second Part,

Containing many rare and new Secrets, never before made publick, relating as well to Management as Cure, and what elſe may contribute to the advantage of Buying or Selling; and many other Things and Matters, highly neceſſary to be known by all Lovers of good Horſes.

With a *Treatiſe* for Curing Diſeaſes in Cattel: Added this IMPRESSION.

The Second Edition.

Illuſtrated with ſundry curious & neceſſary Cuts.

LONDON, Printed by *W. Wilde* for *Nicholas Boddington* at the *Golden Ball* in *Duck-lane*. 1691.

C. 136. ee. 12.

Licenſed and Entred according to Order.

Advertiſement.

AN *Alarm to Unconverted Sinners in a ſe*rious *Treatiſe: Shewing*, 1. *What Con*verſion *is not, and correcting ſome Miſtakes about it*. 2. *What Converſion is, and wherein it conſiſteth.* 3. *The Neeeſſity of Converſion.* 4. *The Marks of the Un*converted. 5. *The Miſeries of the Unconverted*. 6. *Directions for Converſion.* 7. *Motives to Con*verſion. *Whereunto are annexed divers practica*l *Caſes of Conſcience Judiciouſly reſolved.* By Joſep Alleine *late Miniſter of the Goſpel in* Taunton i Somerſetſhire. *Sold by* Nicholas Boddingto *at the* Golden Ball *in* Duck-lane.

30 8.77.

The Preface to the Reader.

Reader,

THough ſundry Perſons, of no ſmall Experience, have undertaken to give Mankind an inſight into the Manner and Method of bringing Horſes to the height of perfection, in what relates to their Rule and Management on thoſe occaſions, or Services to which they are properly intended or deſigned; as likewiſe to know and diſtinguiſh them in all their Capacities, with Directions for diſcovery and cure of diſtempers grievances and defects incident to them; yet let me tell you, there are many things Material of that kind that have not as yet been made publick; all, or moſt of them, ſo neceſſary to be known by the curious Enquirers into this Myſtery, that without knowing them no Man can be an excellent Jockey, or an

expert Farrier, nor consequently have his Judgement approved in any thing material, relating to Horses or Horsemanship. Great indeed have been the Studies and Travel of the Industrious of many Kingdoms and Provinces in this Affair, whose Labours have worthily found acceptance: The Consideration of which has imboldned me to make this Essay, hoping it will turn to a General advantage, being rightly considered, put in practice, and applied; since that by a more than usual curiosity, what has been contained in this, has been searched out through all the revealed and (till now) unrevealed Mysteries of this kind, so that the Reader may with easie prospect or survey, find out whatever he can wish, relating to a good Horse, good Management, knowledge in the Craft, and means to preserve his Beast from a multitude of Infirmities; nay rescue him from death and utter destruction, near and into which, through neglect or ignorance, he is fallen; and thereby not only give themselves satisfaction in the prolonging the days and health of so Noble a Creature for Service and Em-

ployment

ployment ſundry ways, but always redound to their profit and advantage in capacitating them to ſell and diſpoſe of at a conſiderable rate, the Horſe that they perhaps deemed loſt, and of no value: In order to which, beſide the Myſtery of Breeding Horſes to the beſt advantage and regard that is to be obſerved in diet, dreſſing, and preparing them for Racing, and other the like Undertakings with Habit of Body, Knowledge of Goodneſs or Badneſs; and in general and particular, all things of that or any other kind whatſoever that is requiſite to be known, I have ſet down ſuch ready and eaſie ways and methods to diſcover Diſeaſes and other Grievances jointly and ſeverally; as alſo ſpeedily, and with little charge, labour, or trouble to prevent, redreſs, or cure them; that what is written muſt undoubtedly ſatisfie the largeſt expectation as to things of this nature, or at leaſt give that ſatisfaction, that the moſt penurious or critical may find enough to make him confeſs that time and coſt were not employed in vain. Some indeed may upon the firſt ſight object againſt the ſmallneſs of this Book, and imagine a

ſubject ſo copious, allowing ſuch variety, is u
likely to be cramped in ſo narrow a corner
But let me tell them, that when at great e
pence and pains they have ſearched large
Volumes, as alſo into the unpubliſhed Pract
ces of thoſe who are famous at this day, th
will find that they have wearied themſelves i
vain in travelling the longeſt way about, whe
in all that tedious progreſs they found nothi
material but what is comprehended in th
Treatiſe. But not longer to gloſs upon wh
is able to ſpeak for it ſelf, I ſhall only ſay tha
of this kind, Nothing exceeds it; and
ſubmit it to the Cenſure of the Ingeniou
Reader, and remain,

Yours further to oblige you

G. L

To his very good Friend, The ingenious *G. L.* upon the peruſal of his Book, intituled, *The Gentleman's New Jockey*, &c.

SIR, I have view'd the Authors of this kind,
That did pretend or ſeem'd to this inclin'd:
(This Art I would have ſaid) ſuch as have wrote
Unskill'd themſelves; and would have others
But prove in all their large Pretence defect, (taught:
Either the cauſe of Weakneſs, or Neglect.
But in the Work you to the World propoſe,
I find to th' Eſſence of thoſe numerous thoſe,
Who vainly built on a Foundation bad;
Which from all Structures of old times they had;
You have Additions in ſtrange meaſure made,
Such as thoſe Ages never knew. So when
Light from the Chaos ſprung, thoſe things were ſeen,
That brooding Darkneſs ſpreads her wings upon,
And long obſcur'd beneath her gloomy Throne.
In Epitome, the noble Creature you
Have in perfection given all his due:
From his beginning to his end, and done
What has in Ages paſt, attention won
By all the Brave, the Wiſe, when in a Cloud,
It dimly ſhone; but you remove the Shroud,
And give, unſcreen'd, a proſpect of what may
Avail Mankind, and your own worth diſplay:
Whilſt thoſe who Hunt, who Travel or in War,
At Home ſeek Fame, or in the Regions far,
Aided by your advice, as ever free
From Danger great, or Ill-conveniency.
And could a Creature made Irrational,
Arrive to that Diſcretion which we call
The Sence of Mankind; he far more then they
Would for this Work, a humble Tribute pay,
And at your feet himſelf an Off'ring lay.

Sir, yours to ſerve you, J. D

THE CONTENTS OF THE First PART.

CHAP. I.

EXcellent Rules and Inſtructions highly neceſſary to be obſerved in the Election and Choice of good Breeders, how, and at what time, &c. a Mare ought to be covered; how ordered being with Foal, and after Foaling: With many other things of the like nature. Page

CHAP II.

HOw to manage a good Colt to bring him to be an excellent Horſe and what is to be obſerved in the timely knowledge of what he will be when come to Maturity; with the ſeaſon of Weaning, Cutting and Uſage, &c. P.

CHAP

CHAP. III.

When and how to break a Colt, and render him tame and gentle; with the Art of Management on that occasion and many other things necessary and requisite to be known. p. 8

CHAP. IV.

THE Art of Dressing in General; and may serve upon all occasions for bringing a Horse to perfection, and render a Groom or Horse-keeper acceptable to Persons of Quality, &c. 10

CHAP. V.

How to render any tollerable good Horse an excellent Racer; And how Running-Horses ought to be managed in Diet, Physick, and Exercise, in order to their being capable of Running a Match with success, &c. 11

CHAP. VI.

A Continuation of what is to be done to the Running or Race-horse, relating to his Election, Dressing, Feeding, and other Usage, &c.

CHAP. VII.

Heats what they are, and how to be managed to the best advantage, in Racing and all other Recreatory undertakings. 16

CHAP. VIII.

HOw to make the Bread of the first Make; and what ought to be observed in the distribution thereof, with many other things. p. 17

CHAP. IX.

OTher things to be taken notice of, in regard to the Running-Horse, in the second Fortnights Dyet and Ordering. 20

CHAP. X.

THe Running-horse's third and fourth Fortnight; and what is to be observed therein as to Diet, Usage and bringing the Horse to the Weighing-Post, &c. 22

CHAP. XI.

WHat the Rider ought to be; and what by him is to be considered in order to Backing and good Management as also the Office and Duty of a Groom, &c. 25

CHAP. XII.

INfallible Rules for buying a good Horse; and how to well by sundry marks and tokens to distinguish good from bad, as well in case of soundness as diseases, as thereby to prevent being imposed on or cheated, &c. 28

CHAP. XIII.

EXact and Infallible Rules to know the Age of a Horse by the perfections or imperfections of his Teeth in all their particular and general Marks; as also by the Tail; when the Mark is out of the Mouth, &c. 36

CHAP. XIV.

HOw exactly to know the ſtate or condition of a Horſe's Body, relating to Fatneſs or Leanneſs, Health or Sickneſs; with many other things worthy of note. p. 40

CHAP. XV.

OBſervations to be taken as to the ſtate of a Horſe's Body, from the Privy-parts, Limbs, Feeding, and many other Matters and Diſcourſes, worthy to be taken notice of by the Curious, &c. 44

CHAP. XVI.

OF the Elementary parts of a Horſe's Body, and of the Agreement of the Humours therewith. A diſcourſe of Corruption and Generation; in which is ſet forth all things of that kind, relating to Goodneſs or Badneſs, Health or Sickneſs, &c. 45

CHAP. XVI.

HOw a Horſe ought to be uſed in general and particular, as to his Phyſick, Diet, and Looking to, for the preſervation of him even to old Age. 49

CHAP. XVII.

AN exact Deſcription of the Veins of a Horſe, how ſituate in the Body; as alſo of Blood-letting; and how, and upon what account of Sickneſs, or other defect, the Veins are to be opened, for the prevention of death or danger. 54

CHAP. XIX.

The Contents.

CHAP. XIX.

A *Discourse of the Sinews, and their Situation; together with their Use and Office; and what farther in that kind is to be observed as to the state of a horse's Body,* &c. *with the Description of the Bones,* &c. p. 57

CHAP. XX.

OF *Blood-letting in general; and how to know by sundry signs and tokens the state of a horse's Body, when and where it is convenient to let him Blood, for the preventing of sickness, or recovery of health.* 59

CHAP. XXI.

A *Description of Diseases, Grievances or Sorrances, incident to Horses,* &c. *to foresee them by sundry signs and tokens, and know whence they arise; with the ways and methods of Preventing, Redressing and Curing them, by approved Rules and Remedies, according to the Practice of the best Farriers in all Ages,* &c. 63

CHAP. XXII.

EXcellent *Receipts for the Cure of Diseases,* &c. *in Horses or Mares, according to the best Experience of skillful Practitioners: Many of which were never before made publick.* 65

The Glaunders; from what it proceeds, and how to Cure it. 66

The Quinzey in a Horse, &c. *what it is; and how to Cure it.* ibid.

A Horse's Bleeding at the Nose, how to Lay or prevent it. 67

For

The Contents.

For Pains in the Teeth or Jaws. ibid.
The Canker in the Nose, what it is, and the Remedy. ibid.
A Remedy for the Collick, Belly-ach, or Belly-binding. 68
The Lasks or Bloudy-flux, and its Remedy. ibid.
The Botts, what they are, and their Cure. ibid.
For the Shoulder-strain, a good remedy. 69
Broken-wind; what it is, and to remedy it if not past Cure. ibid.
A Horse burnt by a Mare, how to Cure. 70
For a dry Cough, Cold, Pursiveness, broken Wind, or shortness of Breath, an excellent Remedy. ibid.
To restore decayed and putrefied Lungs. 71
A dry Consumption, its Remedy, &c. ibid.
The Breast-pain; from whence it proceeds, and how to Cure it. 72
Heart-sickness, or the Antecor; *whence it proceeds, and how to remedy it.* ibid.
Foundering in the Body or surfeiting, how occasioned; together with the Remedy. 73
The greedy Worm or hungry Evil; what it is, and how to be remedied or prevented. 74
Yellow and Black Jaundice in a Horse, the Cause and Cure, &c. ibid.
Costiveness; from whence it proceeds, and its Remedy. 75
The Cramp, or Convulsion in the Nerves or Sinews, how occasioned; together with the Remedy, &c. 76
The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause and the means to Cure it. ibid.
Frenzy or Madness, its Original; with the means to remedy it according to the Experienced way. 77
The Falling-Evil, its Cause and Remedy. 78
The sleeping-Evil; what it is, and the way to remedy it. ibid.
The Horse Pestilence, and its Cure. 79
For Chest-foundring, the Remedy. ibid.
For an Obstruction in the Bladder, or Windiness in the Bowels, &c. ibid.

The

The Contents.

The Pole-Evil, how to know and cure. p. 80
The Fistula how to discover and cure. 81
Hard Kernels under the Throat, how to remove. ibid.
For the Navel-gall, the Remedy. ibid.
For a Blow, Bruise, or the like misfortune that causes a Swelling or Tumour, the Remedy. 82
The Scratches their Remedy. ibid.
For Foot-foundering, a Remedy. 83
For a Canker in the Head, a Remedy. ibid.
For the Mangey or dry Scurvy, a Cure. ibid.
The Vives *and their Remedy.* 84
For swinking in the Back, or a Strain in the Kidnies caused by indiscreet Riding or over-burthening. 85
For any pain or foulness in the Reins or Kidnies, an excellent Scowring, &c. ibid.
A present relief for an Attaint or Over-reach on the Heel or the like. ibid.
A Cure for the Sorrance called the Ring-bone. ibid.
For the Water-Farcion, a Remedy. 86
For the Ives, a Remedy. ibid.
To take off the Film or Skin from a horse's Eye. 87
A Mallender, the Remedy to cure it. ibid.
For the Palsey or Appoplexy, a Remedy. ibid.
A Farcion in the Head and Neck, to cure. 88
A Lineament to cleanse a Wound new or old. ibid.
For Kib'd-heels, commonly called the Mules, *a Remedy.* ibid.
The Quitter-bone, what it is, with its Remedy. ibid.
An excellent Cure for the Blood-spavin, &c. 89
For a Neather, Attaint, or Over-reach in the Pastern-Joynt. ibid.
For a putrified Frush the Cure. 90
To dissolve the Humours, and thereby anticipate Diseases ibid.
To soften any hard swelling or contracted hardness. ibid.
For the Splint, Wind-gall, or Bladders of Gelly in or about any of the Joynts subject thereto. ibid.
To cleanse any putrefied, or other Sore, the safest way. 91

A Horſe Planet-ſtruck, how to Cure. p. 91
For the Poze or exceſſive Cold, a Remedy. 92
To remedy or cure Hide-boundneſs in a Horſe. ibid.
For a wet inward Cough a Remedy. ibid.
For a dangerous Cough, commonly called the dry Cough. 93
For the Yard of a Horſe falling, a Remedy. ibid.
To prevent the Mattering of the Yard. ibid
Of the Diſeaſes incident moſtly to Mares, and known by the name of the Peſtilent-conſumption. 94
How a Mare that is ſubject to caſt her Foal ought to be uſed. ibid.
How to oblige a Mare to caſt her Foal. 95
Of the ſeveral Fevers in a Horſe, and how to Cure them, &c. ibid.
For any diſeaſe and ſtoppage in the Liver. 97
For a Botch or Sorrance in the Groin of a Horſe, a good Cure. ibid.
For a general Mangineſs, the remedy. ibid.
The Barbs, what they are and how removed. 98
For Blood-ſhot Eyes an excellent Remedy. ibid.
For any Film, Bite or Blow in the Eye, a Remedy. 99
To kill Lice, or remove Flies from offending your Horſe. ibid.
To rid a Horſe from any foulneſs or diſorder in the Body. ibid.
For an extraordinary Bruiſe or Bite. ibid.
For a Horſe that is troubled with the Strangling, a Cure. 100
To remedy the Swelling of a Horſe upon having eaten any infectious thing in his Graſs or Provender, that may, if not remedied, prove dangerous. ibid.
For a Heart-burning or Waſting occaſioned thereby. ibid.
To prevent ſtaling Blood, a remedy. ibid.
Another exeellent Remedy for the Farcy, vulgarly called the Faſhion. ibid.
An approved Cure for any Sinew-ſtrain or Over-reach. 101

Diſea-

The Contents.

Diseases in the Hoof, how to remedy, &c. p. 101
Hoof-bound; what it is, and how to remedy it. ibid
To soften or harden a hoof the best way. 102
To harden a hoof as occasion requires. ibid.
For any hurt or Canterous Sore in or on the hoof. 103
To oblige a Horse to carry his Ears well; &c. ibid.
For the grievance called the Frounce, *a Cure.* ibid.
For a heat which sometimes occasions a breaking out in the Mouth and Lips, the Cure, 104
Wolf-teeth, what they are, and how to ease their Pains the ready way. ibid.
To stanch any Bleeding, a speedy way. ibid.
To supply the defect of the falling of the Crest, &c, 105
To cure Mangines, or the like disorder, in the Crest, ibid.
The Navel-gall, what it is and its Remedy. ibid.
For a Sitfast or horney Excrescence under the Saddle, whereby the horse is disabled from carrying it in good order as he ought. 106
For any Knob or Wen near the Saddle-skirt, or the Sides of the horse, a Remedy. ibid.
For Weakness in the Back, a strengthning remedy. ibid
For the Swelling in the Cods of a horse naturally, or occasioned by any Bruise, &c. 107
For Burstenes, or the Rupture in a horse. ibid.
The Art of discovering hidden Griefs or Ailments in a horse, and from what they proceed. 108
The Bone-spavin, what it is, &c. ibid.
For a Haw in the Eye, 109
For the falling out of the fundament, a remedy. ibid.
To preserve a hoof from decaying, &c. ibid.
Interfering, what it is, and the remedy. ibid.
A false Quarter what in is. 110
The Melt on the heel. ibid.
An excellent remedy for any Strain or Swelling. ibid.
How to remedy the harm done a horse by unadvisedly and unskilfully letting Blood 111
For the Leprosie in horses, a remedy, with the cause. ibid.
For any disease in the Lungs, an excellent remedy. ibid.

For

The Contents.

For the Swelling of the horſe's Legs the Cure. p. 112
The flying Worm what it is, and how to Cure it. 113
Excellent Directions for the prevention of Diſeaſes in Horſes, at ſundry times, &c. ibid
A Cure for a ſore or defective Mouth. 114
For the Mellet in the heels. 115
The Stavers, their ſigns, cauſe and cure. ibid.
For the Stone, a very good remedy. 116
To take away a Wen in the Neck, or any part of the Horſe's Body, without danger. ibid.
The Crownet-Scab, what it is, together with the Cure. ibid.
To draw out a Thorn or Stump or any Iron or ſharp thing gotten into the fleſh. 117
For a Strain in the Coffin-joynt, &c. ibid.
For a Horſe that is perpetually ſick or out of order. 118
For a cold in the Summer, &c. ibid.
A Through-ſplint or ſcrew-pin, what it is. 119.
To render a brittle hoof firm and ſerviceable. ibid.
To cure the Ambury. ibid.
To prevent a Horſe's piſſing Blood. ibid
For a broken Knee. ibid.
For the Dropſey in a horſe. 120
To joyn a Sinew that is cut. ibid.
For a Wound or hurt in the Tongue. ibid.
For the Itch in the Tail, or any other part. 121
Another excellent Remedy for the Tetter. ibid.
For a hurt or Wring in the Withers. ibid.
Worms of any ſort in the Body of a horſe, how to kill and remove them. ibid.
An excellent Salve for any ſort of Wound, how to make and apply it. 122
An Impoſthume to ripen and cure. ibid.
For an eternal ſickneſs, &c. ibid.
For the Ach, weakneſs or numb'dneſs of the Joynts. 123
How to ſtay any violent Looſeneſs. ibid.
The Lampas, what it is and how to cure it, ibid.
For the Fig in the foot of a horſe. 124

The Contents.

For the Flanks a disease so called, and the way to remedy it. p. 12

The Shackle-gall and its cure. 12

A Horse that is Gravelled, how to remedy. ibid.

Of Cataplasms or Poultises. 12

For any Swelling, Apostume, Rankling, Wound or broke Bone. ibid.

For a Swelling in the Throat or under the Ears. ibid.

To draw or break a Boil or Ulcerous Sore, &c. ibid.

An excellent Poultis to assuage any pain or separate Tumour. ibid.

A Poultis to break any Infectious Sore. 12

To disperse the Flux or Oppression of Blood in any part. ibid.

For an Imposthume or sudden swelling in any part of the Body. ibid.

In case of the Palsey in the Head, &c. ibid.

To heal and contract any Wound. 12

An inward Balm to destroy Worms and heal Internal Bruises. ibid.

An excellent Balm in case of any Sprain, Internal Bruise, Swelling, Blasting, old Sore, or Gun-shot. ibid.

An excellent Balm to be given a Horse inward, in case of a Consumption. ibid.

An excellent Red Water to cure Ulcers. 129

An excellent Water to allay any internal heat or feaverish Indispondency. ibid.

In case a Horse be troubled with the Stone, an excellent Water. ibid.

For any disease in the Eyes, &c. ibid.

An excellent Purgation for Gravel in the Bladder or Kidnies, 130

For the Ulceration of the Yard, an excellent Water. ibid.

An excellent Powder for the falling-sickness or falling-evil in a Horse. ibid.

A Powder for the Ague, which frequently happens, especially to young Horses. ibid.

To purge Choler and Flegm, an excellent Powder. 31

An

The Contents.

An excellent Bath to allay any Swelling or ſuch-like diſorder, eſpecially diſeaſes in the Legs, occaſioned by the deſcending of evil humours, &c. p. 131
A Bath to ſoften and mollifie the Skin. ibid.
To ſtanch Blood in any Vein or Artery. ibid.
An excellent Medicament to provoke a Horſe to Vomit, as alſo to purge his Belly, ibid.
An excellent Purge, good on ſundry occaſions. 132
For a Foynt-ſickneſs. ibid.
For an Internal Ulcer. ibid
An excellent Electuary for a dangerous Cough or ratling Cold. ibid.

CHAP. XXIII.

THE Symptoms of Diſeaſes, Sorrances, Diſtempers, Grievances, or the like, in general and particular, how to foreſee them and prevent them; as alſo to know when they happen, &c. 133

CHAP. XXIV.

Directions for making and preparing Ointments, Oils, Salves, Waters, Purgations, Poultiſes, Charges, Supplements, Pills, Powders, &c. ſingular good in caſe of any Diſtemper or Sorrance, &c. 136

An Oyntment to ſearch any Wound or Ulcerated Sore or any thing of the like nature. ibid.
An Oyntment excellent good in caſe of Botches, Boils, Scabs or the like Sorrances. 137
To skin any Wound, an excellent Oyntment. ibid.
To mollifie and aſſwage any Swelling, an excellent Oyntment.

The Contents.

An excellent Oyntment to cool and allay any Inflammatio 13

An excellent Oyntment, or rather Balſome, to be i. war given a Horſe for Obſtructions, Bruiſes, and othe Ailments and Grievances. ibi

To make a green Oyntment proved by Experience, more effectu than what has formerly been publiſhed. 13

An excellent Remedy for the Staggers, or any Pain th ſuddenly takes a Horſe, ſometimes to the loſs of h life. ibi

An excellent Salve for any Wound. ibi

An approved Salve to draw any ſtub, thorn, or ſplinter Bone or Wood out of the fleſh. 13

To fill a Wound, Ulcer, or the like, with good fleſh, an ex cellent Plaiſter. ibi

A Salve to draw Corruption from the bottom of a Wound, or to draw a Swelling, or any ſuch grievance to head. ibi

To ripen a Tumour, or aſſwage any Swelling, not aboundi with extraordinary humours. ibi

An excellent Poultis for a Tumour or Swélling. ibi

A Charge to eaſe a Pain in the Back, or for any Sprai 14

To mollifie any Chap or rough Sore. ibi

For the Eyes of a Horſe, afflicted by any means, an approv Water to cure or eaſe them. ibi

A Water to Waſh the Mouth in caſe of any Sorrance defect. ibi

A Pill good for any internal diſorder, &c. ibi

A Supplement exceeding good for any ſtrain or grief in t Sinews, &c. 14

A Vomit for a Horſe that has a Queeſy ſtomach, thereby render him a good Appetite. ibi

To purge Melancholy. ibi

To purge Flegm. ibi

CHA

The Contents.

CHAP. XXV.

Clysters, how to make them, and on what occasion they ought to be applied in order to their effectual working and bringing away bad humours. 142

In case of any Pestilential disease, occasioned by a cholerick or fiery humour. ibid.

For any Internal distemper proceeding from Melancholly. ibid.

For any distemper Internal occasioned by sanguine, corrupt Blood, or watry Humours, by means of bad concoction or obstruction, &c. 143

For Sickness in general an approved Clyster. ibid.

In case of Restringency or hard Binding. ibid.

CHAP. XXVI.

Cordials, Cordial-Powders, Drinks and Drenches, Purgations and Suppositories, wonderfully conducing to the health and strength of a horse. 144

Diapente, an excellent Powder in case of any cold or Pestilential diseases. ibid.

An excellent Cordial-Ball to be given in case of any Internal distemper and especially to prevent the Consumption, or wasting of any part, &c. ibid.

An excellent Drench to cure any Internal distemper proceeding from any of the four Humours of the Body, &c. *especially such as are Pestilential.* 145

Suppositories and their Use. ibid.

The Contents.

CHAP. XXVII.

Perfumes, Baths and Purgations; what they are, and to what end they serve: with the Manner how; and under what Considerations they ought to be applied. Page 147

Directions for Purging, according to the estate and condition of your Horse. 148

CHAP. XXVIII.

Costicks, Corrosives, and Rowelling, what they are; for what causes, and in what manner to be applied. 149

Rowelling; what it is, and how to be performed. 150

THE

THE CONTENTS OF THE Second PART.

CHAP. I.

THE Manner of Breaking a Horſe the beſt way, and perfecting him in his Paces, &c. and preſerving him from danger, &c. Page 154

CHAP. II.

HOw the Jockies make Old Horſes look young; A lean Horſe artificially and naturally; how fatned by Jockies. A Remedy for Reſtiffneſs, Neighing, and the vice of Lying down in the Water: The Art of making Stars, Snips, Blazes, ſetting on falſe Ears, Tails, Manes, &c. 162

A Horſe ſubject to lye down in the Water how to remedy it. 163

A Tired or Reſtiff Horſe, to remedy. 164

To prevent the Troubleſomeneſs of a Horſe's Neighing, which may prove diſadvantagious to the Maſter, eſpecially in time of War. ibid.

If a Horſe be dull, and will not feel the Spur without much wounding, &c. 165

To make a lean Horſe artificially fat, or to ſeem ſo to the Buyer. ibid.

To make a lean Horſe really fat, the beſt and cheapeſt way. 166

To

The Contents.

To make the hair of a Horſe that ſtands rough and ſtaring, ſmooth and ſleek. 167
To make Hair come where it is thin, or to take it away where it is thick. ibid
Stars, Blazes, Snips; what they are, and how to make them for Ornament or Diſguiſe in any part of the Horſe where they may be conveniently ſituate. 168
To make a Black Star in a White horſe. 169
To make a Blaze-Royal. 171
The loſs of Ears how to ſupply. 172

CHAP. III.

How to ſet a horſe off for Sale to the beſt advantage, by Trimming, Waſhing, &c. As alſo directions for the Management of a Horſe in Hunting, relating to his Leaping, &c. 173

How to make a Ball, wherewith a horſe being well Lathered and ſmoothed down, ſhall look exceeding ſleek and comely. 174
How to Manage a Horſe in Leaping, taking a Hedge, Gate, Stile, Ditch, &c. 175

CHAP. IV.

What the Stable to keep a good horſe in ought to be; and how he ought to be regarded; the hoofs how to be corrected and mended in Shooing, &c. 178

Critical Days and the Obſervation thereon. 182
Some further conſiderations upon the Cauſe of Diſeaſes, and how to remove them, &c. 183
The Spirits, what they are, with their Office, &c. 185
A further Deſcription of the External Parts, &c. 186

THE

THE Gentleman's New Jockey: OR, FARRIER's Approved Guide.

CHAP. I.

Excellent Rules and Inſtructions, highly neceſſary to be obſerved in the Election and choice of good Breeders. How and at what time, &c. a Mare ought to be Covered; how ordered being with Foal, and after Foaling: With many other things of the like nature.

WHEN any Gentleman or other Perſon is deſirous of a good Breed of Horſes or Mares, that may redound to his Pleaſure and Profit, the chief thing is to Elect a Stallion and Mare or Mares, in whom Nature has not been defective, but rather fitted and framed for Beauty, and promiſing ſervice of what kind ſoever, ſhall be premeditated or propoſed by the Maſter: And in this caſe Inſtructions, how unerringly to chuſe ſuch as may anſwer the largeſt expectation, will not be amiſs; for as the Sire and Dam are, ſuch will the Colts prove.

Thoſe that have been Curious in theſe matters, ge
rally agree, That the Mare for breed ought to be ab
four years old, altogether free from Diſeaſes and
rances, clear limbed and well proportioned, her E
lively and ſparkling, ſtanding ſomewhat out of her He
her Ears ſtanding direct, her Buttocks broad and
fleſhed, with a large Womb, little Head, well-ſet Sho
ders, and an Arched Neck; her Legs even, and
Neighing ſharp and clear, with fair Hoofs and large R
one that is not uſed to trip, ſtumble, interfere, or gi
to any untowardly vice. And to Anſwer her, The St
lion ought to have a little Head, inclining to leanne
a ſwelling Forehead, full Ears, with Eyes quick a
ſtanding out, being ſomewhat ſpeckled with Blood,
Noſe crookt, or bending, his Noſtrils wide, and Neck ar
wiſe, with a large Throple and curling Mane, br
and well-ſet Shoulders, large Knee-joynts and lean Le
a well-ſet Cheſt, broad Back, large Ribs, a gaunt Be
Straits, Fillets, and good Paſterns well knit and well p
portioned; of Colour bright Bay or Cole black; thou
in this caſe other Colours may prove good, both as
the Mare and Stallion, as will appear when I come
deſcribe the Goodneſs by the Colour, &c.

A good choice thus made, it will be altogether co
venient to feed your Stallion for a time in the Stable w
heartning Provender, as Splent-beans, Oats, or ſod B
ley, to render him luſty and mettleſome; yet let h
feed on good green Paſture, at leaſt a day before
ſuffer him to back your Mare, for fear that by reaſon
the ſtiffneſs of his Limbs, and purſiveneſs, he b.eak
Wind by overſtraining himſelf in the Action. If
Mare, who muſt be ſuffered to Run in good warm
ſture, appear averſe, and by her ſtriking, or otherw
ſeeming unwilling, decline the company of the Stalli
then will it be convenient to put ſome little Stone N
to wooe her, taking away the Stallion; and when he
brought her to a complyance, take him away witho
ſuffering him to leap her, and bring the Stallion to
ag

gain about Sun-riſe, the Ground being well fenced about, and, no doubt, ſhe will ſuffer her ſelf to be Covered; and if the Horſe be very head-ſtrong and unruly, will not be amiſs if two ſtrong Men lead him to her, nd manage him according to their diſcretion, for fear e injure himſelf or the Mare: Then let a third ſtand eady with a Bucket of Water to caſt upon the Mare's hape with all his force, ſo ſoon as the Horſe diſmounts er, thereby to make her ſhrink up her Body, and ſuddainly cloſe the Womb for the better Retention of the eed, and in fifteen days after, if you imagine ſhe has ot thorowly conceived, which will appear by her turning her back part to the Wind, pricking up her Ears often, ſcenting the Air and Neighing, you may put the Horſe to her again, and order her in the like manner; ut if the Mare be notwithſtanding defective in Conception, to Remedy that fault, occaſioned moſtly by too uch Blood, take a pint of Blood from either ſide her eck four or five days before your Horſe Covers her; nd the day after bleeding, Take a quart of warm Milk, alf a pint of the Juyce of Mugwort, *London*-Treacle and weet Butter, of each two ounces, diſſolve them together; and being well mixed, give them to her in a renching-horn luke-warm, and you ſhall find the effects nſwer your expectation, eſpecially if twice or thrice reeated the ſucceeding mornings when ſhe is faſting: Now if ſhe has conceived well, her Belly within four or ive days will appear gaunt, her Hair more bright and hining, her regard of Horſes or noiſes will be little, her ears will flag, and ſhe will decreaſe in fleſh. Ways here are to oblige either Stallion or Mare, in caſe of Averſneſs, by rubbing a Spunge in the Mares Shape, and with it rubbing the Horſes Noſe; as likewiſe by rubbing the Shape of the Mare with *Aqua-vitæ*, Cow-Itch, Nettle-ſeed, or the like. But theſe being vulgarly known, I ſhall wave them, and proceed to what is more material to be known,

Some are of opinion, that knitting the right Stone of the Horſe with a Lift or ſilken Cord will occaſion a Female Colt, and the contrary a Male; but how often this has failed, there are few Horſe-keepers ignorant: Wherefore to follow Experience, the beſt Miſtreſs, obſerve, that if you would be ſure of a Stone-Colt, to let your Mare be covered when *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer* or *Leo* are predominant, which are called Maſculine Signs, and as well rule Irrational as Rational Creatures; and if your deſires are contrary, then let *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricorn*, *Aquaries* and *Piſces* be your Rule. For as Heat and Moiſture are the great diſtinguiſhers of the Sex, ſo the Signs influencing more or leſs, are not a little concerned as Second Cauſes in the production of things participating of their temperature.

For the ſpace of three weeks, or ſomewhat longer after Covering, ſhe muſt or ought to be kept in a warm Houſe and Dieted, leaſt the Conception happen to be impaired before the Colt be well formed; and after that ſhe muſt not be hard rid nor laboured, neither come near to any Ground or Stable where unruly Cattle are, or where, by attempting to leap, ſhe may injure her ſelf; leaſt thereby her Maſter's expectation be fruſtrated by Miſcarriage, or the Colt's being bruiſed and diſtorted in the Womb; obſerving the Ground ſhe runs in be dry, well ſheltered with ſpreading Trees, Barns, Quickets, or Out-houſes, under or into which ſhe may retire at leaſure; nor will it be unneceſſary to have Racks with Provender placed where ſhe may advantagiouſly come at them.

The time that a Mare goes with Fold, unleſs ſome miſchance happen, is by the moſt curious Obſervers a year and ten days, though ſome will have it twelve months within eleven days, and ſome a ſhorter time. This, I confeſs, as to a young Mare, in her firſt Teeming, does often fall out; but upon the ſecond Foaling rarely or never: For if your Mare be Covered about the middle of *December*, which is the beſt time ſhe may

have

ave the advantage of the Summer to run in, and the llowing Spring to bring up her Colt; ſhe will be ſure foal about the latter end of *December* in the following ear, as has been frequently obſerved. When the time her Foaling is at hand, let thoſe whoſe charge it is be iſting to her in caſe of emergency, ſhe being conti-ued in a warm Houſe without any Halter or other cum-erſome thing about her, whereby ſhe may be hindred caufed to ſlip or ſtumble, being eaſed in her lying own with clean Litter, or laying, to receive the Colt, if e caſt it ſtanding, as often it happeneth; and when e has dryed the Colt with licking, let the Milk be awn from her Teats before ſhe be ſuffered to ſuck her, prevent it's clotting in the Udder; and if ſhe be ſcan-of Milk, to prevent dryneſs and increaſe it, give her arm Maſhes, with ſome Powder of Brimſtone and Wa-er, wherein Scabeous or Vervine have been boiled, a-inting her Dugs with the Decoction of Lavender and ike; and ſo a Month or two after you may work or de her gently; but beware if ſhe return hot, let her ol before the Colt take the Teat, leſt the humours eing too much ſtirred, the heat of the Milk being too reedily taken, ſurfeit him: and thus a good Mare will ring forth able Colts till ten years, and a Stallion get hem till twelve; but thoſe that on either part happen eyond, will prove weaklings, and not worth the rearing. nd thus much for procuring a Colt; which if carefully eared, will unqueſtionably make a good Horſe or Mare: Wherefore to leave nothing of that kind in the dark, I hall proceed to direct in the following Chapter what neceſſary to be done till the time of Backing, *&c.* nd from thence onward to the reſt, more materially to e known by the Reader.

CHAP. II.

How to manage a good Colt to bring him to be an excellent Horſe, and what is to be obſerved in the timely knowledge of what he will be when come to Maturity; with the ſeaſon of Weaning, Cutting and Uſage, &c.

THough what has been ſaid be exactly obſerved and performed, yet a Colt, after it is brought forth may be ſpoiled by neglect, or for want of Management in his tender Age; which is the next thing requiſite to be taken notice of, that proceeding gradually in paſſing through the ſeveral Stations of ſo accurate a matter, I may be eaſily traced in my Method, and thereby the better and more exactly underſtood, plainneſs and brevity being the marks at which I aim; and yet that in accompliſhing my deſign, nothing may be wanting that may conduce to the advantage of any.

The firſt thing neceſſary to know, whether a Colt will make a Horſe, and when arrived to Maturity, is the Obſervation of his Lineaments; the Meaſures in that kind to be taken thus: *Viz.* Obſerve whether the Shinbones be ſtrait and even, of a convenient thickneſs, according to a durable or firm proportion, that thereby his tallneſs and ability may be perſpicuous or apparent; for in conſideration of the proportion between the Withers and the Knee you may expect a duplicity, or as much more in the height, when at full growth: Obſerve likewiſe that his Joynts be large and that he be full boned his Head ſmall, lean, and his Ears of a moderate ſize ſtanding upright; and that when he ſtands in due proportion or at eaſe, his hinder Legs ſtand rather backward, than crimpling forward, or even, which denotes ſpeed; then conſider by his friſking or playing up and down, his ſhaking his Ears or Tail, ſtaring in your Face, or the like, his mettleſomeneſs, and conſequently there-

by

by his other properties, as far as his tender age will give an insight; for in this Creature as in all others of what kind soever, there remains no certainty without industry as to the reducing them to the Service of Man-kind: And to prevent his pining when weaned, let him by all means be out of the hearing of his Dam; and that he may the better brook her absence, make a mixture of the best Butter you can get, and Rhubarb, Rue, or Savine, and give him nourishing diet; as Mashes, Plent-beans, boiled Oats and hot Bran, with somewhat that is green and juicey for the space of three Months after: Nor indeed ought he to be used to hard Provender altogether till three years after his weaning, least thereby he be induced to neglect his feeding, and so by pining hinder his growth and activity.

If it be a Stone-Colt, separate him from that of the other Kind at the expiration of a year, least he spoil himself in attempting what he is not capable of performing; and the better to prevent the endangering of either, is to put them into indifferent Pasture, well fenced to prevent leaping, and secured by Quick-sets, Trees, Barns or other Out-houses from heat and cold.

If you design to make Geldings of your Stone-Colts, the proper time to Cut or Dilapidate them is, when they are between nine and twelve Days old, if the Sign of Life, which may be gathered from the Course of the Moon in her Wain, being either in *Aries* or *Virgo*, especially in the Spring or Fall, which are accounted the safest Seasons; though by those who well understand this affair it may be done at any time, the Weather being dry, and not too hot or cold. And what now remains as to the bringing a Colt to perfection, is the Art of the Breeder which may be, as the Vulgar term has it, the principal Verb; for if he neglect his charge, all that has been mentioned may prove ineffectual; which Breeder I also term the Manager; for it is not enough to feed a Horse well, that thereby he may be able-limbed and high mettled, but to bring him up to those de-

grees of Exercise, that may fit him for any imployment: And seeing many are ignorant in this affair, it will be highly necessary to give Directions after the best and most approved manner and method; which take from Experience, the best of Masters, as followeth.

CHAP. III.

When and how to break a Colt and render him tame and gentle; with the Art of Management on that occasion: and many other things necessary and requisite to be known.

WHen your Colt comes to be of the Age of five years, which is a good time to oblige him to endure Backing, or the like, having before made your self familiar with him, by stroaking, feeding, and shaking the Bridle at his head, laying your hand on his back, smacking the Whip or cheriping, with such other signs as are commonly used to create a sufferance; lay your Saddle, not being over weighty, on his Back, continuing, as you observe his patience either to encrease the weight by a greater Saddle, or by placing on the lesser somewhat that is ponderous, stroaking and rubbing him the mean while that he may not be intent on what you are doing; and when you have brought him to a moderate sufferance, girt the Saddle with soft Girths, and that by degrees, loosning them as you find occasion, by his winching and untowardness, or straitning them according to his patience or sufferance: And so in case of your Bridle, which ought to be the second thing applicable in reducing a Colt or young Horse to obedience and observance of what tends to his Accomplishment; but if you perceive a Colt, before he arrive at any convenient Maturity, to be over-mettlesome, it will be prudent to make him familiar, though at a year old, yet not to press his Back with Weights, for fear of swaying

ſwaying it; and ſo by a timely taming him, render the Men of other Nations miſtaken, who account the *Spaniſh*, *Turkey*, *Barbary*, *Peloponeſian*, *Flanders*, *Frieſland*, *Holland* and *Artois* Horſes and Mares the beſt: And the Reaſon that they give is, that they may be made gentle at any Age; which the *Engliſh* Horſes, &c. whom they term of a ſtubborn Nature, cannot be brought to: And indeed the taking of them up too ſoon, without due Management is the occaſion of ſtunting, and other ways ſpoiling, of many a brave Colt or Horſe.

If you find your Endeavour in the manner aforeſaid, fail you in bringing a young Horſe or Mare to your bent, then conſider Loanlineſs may be the occaſion, or fear more than obſtinacy: To remedy which, oblige him or her to accompany thoſe that are Tame, and of a gentle nature, already reduced to what you deſign them, or at leaſt flexible on that occaſion; and by often obſerving you handle them, a mildneſs will be created, and a familiarity will increaſe to a deſire of the like; nor will moderate Rubbing and Picking the Feet be the leaſt means to introduce what elſe you deſire. Some indeed, and thoſe the moſt curious in this affair, will not attempt to Back a Horſe which they intend for Travel or Racing till the ſixth year; but, in my opinion, they loſe a years ſervice thereby to no manner of purpoſe; for the indifference as to the one and the other in this kind, is inconſiderable; unleſs in caſe of extraordinary labour; for conſequently the longer the Horſe remains in good feeding undiſturbed, the ſtronger he grows in Joynt or Member, though leſs in ſwiftneſs.

And ſeeing I have thus far proceeded, it will not be amiſs to give the Breeder an inſight into what more materially relates to his Duty and Office as to Diet and Dreſſing; in order to which he may apply himſelf to the following Chapter

CHAP. IV.

The Art of Dreſſing in General; and may ſerve upon all occaſions for bringing a Horſe to perfection, and render a Groom or Horſe-keeper acceptable to Perſons of Quality, &c.

AS the old Proverb is, *The Eye of the Maſter maketh the Horſe fat*; ſo his care in this caſe is neceſſary (if he cannot be preſent as he would wiſh) to chuſe ſuch a one, who may as well in his abſence as in his preſence, perform his duty to the benefit of his Maſter and his own credit, by riſing early and tending the Horſe or Horſes within his charge; and the beſt Diet in this caſe to bring him to perfection is, in general, a quart of Splent-beans, and two quarts of Oats ſweet and well ſifted; and ſo, if more than one, the like quantity; then Curry him well with an Iron Comb, after that Duſt him over with a Duſting cloth, and paſs a French Bruſh upon him, and ſmooth him with your hands to ſleekneſs, paſſing over him beſide a Woollen, and then Linnen cloath, cleanſing his Eyes, Ears, Sheath, and picking his Feet, placing his Mane decently, and ſmoothing his Forehead after it's being ruffled, to looſen the Skin; when putting on the Saddle, with Wiſps under the Girths, ride him gently to Water, ſuffering him to dung or ſtale as you ſee him inclined; and in caſe of defect, provoke him thereto by letting him ſcent Horſe-dung, muſty Hay, caſt Straw, or entring into Stubble or Brakes; and ſo in a gentle motion return him to your Stable, which ought rather to be Paved than Planked, to prevent dampneſs and unwholſome ſcents ariſing from the Urine, *&c.* that ſtagnates between the creviſes or chinks of the Plank, be they layed never ſo cloſe; of which I ſhall ſay more when I come to give Directions for a convenient Stable, fitting for choice Horſes.

Your

Your Horſe being in the Stable, rub him down in all Points, as before directed, ever obſerving to begin at the Head, and ſo proceed backwards, till every part be decently paſſed over, not taking off the Cloaths, or removing the Bridle under the ſpace of an hour and in the mean while let him have the ſame quantity of Provender as before, adding, as he has diſpatched the Grain, a bottle of ſweet Hay bound up hard and caſt into the Rack, that with ſome labour he may pull it thence. Theſe are General Rules and no way to be contemned.

But from hence I ſhall proceed to thoſe that come nearer to the purpoſe; and have been the beſt Approved ones that this Age can afford, giving in the Experiment a general ſatisfaction to the Ingenious.

CHAP. V.

How to render any tollerable good Horſe an excellent Racer; and how Running Horſes ought to be managed in Diet, Phyſick and Exerciſe, in order to their being capable of Running a Match with ſucceſs, &c.

SEeing Racing is highly in eſteem and a good Horſe of that kind much coveted by the Gentry of all Nations, I ſhall in this Chapter give an inſight into that Affair: And firſt in chuſing a Horſe for Running; conſider he be well managed, tractable, and no ways skittiſh, familiar with his Keeper or Maſter, and free in eating what is given him; lively and ſprightfull in his Looks and Actions; let him be one of an indifferent large reach, well ſet in the ſhoulders, and fairly hipped gaunt and ſmooth backed, his legs and thighs ſtanding in due proportion, his head ſmall and lean with faſt or firm cheek-bones, a ſharp, or Hawks-Noſe, wide Noſtrils.

ſtrils and wide Throple, and not exceeding twelve-years old, nor under ſix, being of a good breed: Nor is this all, for the main point of bringing him into a condition to Run ſucceſsfully is yet behind, which conſiſts in Dyeting, Dreſſing, and carefully Ordering, before he undertake ſuch a buſineſs: And in that caſe, if you would have him anſwer your expectation, obſerve theſe Rules which are by the great Searchers into theſe Myſteries held to be the beſt and moſt exact that ever were.

Reſolving to Run, and having matched your Horſe, the firſt thing you ought to do is, to have a regard to the ſtate and condition wherein he is, as to what relates to his Body in caſe of health, ſickneſs, or any other advantage or diſadvantage, and eſpecially to what follows, As whether he be newly taken from Graſs or Soil, and by that means his Body rendred foul and unwieldy, over-burthened and incumbred with unneceſſary fatneſs or crudy humours; or on the contrary, whether by bad uſage he is become poor and feeble, or that ſome hidden infirmity occaſion leanneſs or a pining away; and, laſtly, whether he be in good liking or ſtate for your purpoſe, by having been moderately exerciſed and carefully regarded.

Theſe Conſiderations weighed, if you find your Horſe in the firſt Eſtate, let him not be matched, if it will any way ſtand with your conveniency under ſix Weeks, or at leaſt not in leſs than a Month, that ſo he may be prepared by regular Diet and Applications, for what he is to undertake.

In the ſecond Eſtate, unleſs your Horſe be neglected, ſix Weeks or a Month may ſuffice, for that his Exerciſe may be ſuted to his Feeding and in that caſe no time loſt, if he that looks after him be carefull and induſtrious.

As for the laſt Eſtate, it being a *Medium* between what has been mentioned, a Month, with care is a ſufficient time to bring him to perfection, though many allow ſix Weeks; but that is, as he is more or leſs inclining to fatneſs or groſs humours, contracted in rank

Paſture

Paſture, or by eating foul Provender. Now if it ſo happen, that any of theſe kinds be of a free and fiery Nature apt to exceſs in Exerciſe, thereby to ſpend the fleſh he has got in Dieting, he that has the charge, muſt, as he ſees convenient, reſtrain him with a hard hand; and if he be defective in feeding, let him uſe what devices he can to prompt him to it, as by whiſtling, ſinging, ſtroaking, clapping, rubbing, toſſing his Provender, and the like, though in the fat Horſe this ought chiefly to be obſerved; for the lean one, and that in good caſe, if not indiſpoſed by any diſtemper or grievance, will eat freely and may be better exerciſed, not needing any reſtriction, unleſs upon extraordinary occaſions though a tender regard muſt be had to either. And becauſe the way of Dieting and Preparing is much deſired, I ſhall now deſcend to treat of it in the Eſtate of the Fat Horſe, in whom the reſt may be comprehended; for he being the moſt difficult to render thus ſerviceable, the reſt with more eaſe, though by the ſame Method may be rendred capable.

CHAP. VI.

A Continuation of what is to be done to the Running or Race-Horſe, relating as to his Election Dreſſing, Feeding, and other Uſage, &c.

THe Horſe you choſe, though naturally a good one, having contracted fatneſs or foulneſs by the means of too rank a Paſture or bad Feeding; having put him in a dry and warm Stable, though ſomewhat darkiſh, to render him the better feeder, lead him out by the riſing of the Sun, ſuffering your Boy or Servant to give him a Turn or two till you have cleanſed the Stable of what is offenſive; then return him, and having your Bridle dipped in Beer, put it on, and tye him up to the Rack; at what time Curry him in every part, beginning

beginning with his Head, and ending with his Paſterns; then with a Horſe-tail, or clean duſting-cloth, duſt him over; that done, Take your French-Bruſh and rub him decently over in all parts, by ſuch degrees as he may be ſenſible of your kind uſage: As firſt the Forehead, then the Cheek, ſo down the Neck on either ſide, after that the Shoulders, Fore-legs, Back, Sides, Belly, Buttock-Rump, Thighs, Cambrils and the very Fetlocks, beating and ſounding the Hoof to make it ſit the firmer: This done, paſs over him again with your wet hand to ſettle the Hair, and render him ſleek and ſhining; the wet being dryed by a repetition, cleanſe his Sheath, Cods and Tuel, his Ears, Eyes and Noſtrils, his Mane, Foretop and Tail, and rub the moiſture, if any remain, from between his hinder Thighs, picking his Hoofs, and running over his Legs with dry Wiſps, or a clean Woollen-cloath, which if you ſee convenient, paſs over his Body, combing his Mane, Tail and Foretop: Having thus far proceeded, take a large Body-cloath of Kerſey, or the like thick Woollen, and ſpread over him, if it happen in the Winter; but if in the Summer, that of a lighter make will ſuffice; on that lay a light Saddle, girting it pretty ſtrait, yet let a Wiſp or two ſtick on each ſide to give him the better breathing room, bracing the Cloth likewiſe about his Breaſt and Shoulders.

Thus having dreſſed and attired your Horſe, ſpurt a little warm Beer into his Mouth, and lead him forth, and mount him, leaving one to order the Stable and provide good Litter againſt your return, Wheat-ſtraw being the beſt of that with which your Stable muſt always be ſufficiently provided for; other Straw is not only unſeemly, but unwholſome; the Oat-ſtraw breeding diſlike, and the Barly-ſtraw, if your Horſe be ſubject to eat it, a ſcowring.

Being abroad, ride your Horſe for ſome time a foot-pace, which, by the curious is termed Raceing; and after you have ſo managed him for the ſpace of a Mile or more upon firm ground, advance to a Hill that gently

gently riſes, if the ſituation of the place afford it; and mending by degrees his pace, bring him to Gallop up; the which when he has performed, lead him, or Race him down to the beſt advantage, ſuffering him to cool and contract an equal temperature of Body. Thus having done, as you ſee your Horſe without over-ſtraining will conveniently bear it, lead him a Mile or thereabout to ſome pleaſant River or Spring, and ſuffer him to drink moderately, and then Exerciſe him as before: which done, give him a ſecond Watering, and after that another Exerciſe, ever obſerving to Exerciſe him before and after watering; which done, ride him eaſily home; and coming to the Stable-door, alight, ſuffering your Horſe to ſtale or dung in the foul litter; the which if he refuſe freely to do, provoke him to it by whiſtling, clapping, or waving your Switch, raiſing the Straw under him, and reaching him upon it; which will often, if not always, oblige him to it, Cuſtome giving him an inſight into what you would have him to do. This done lead him in, and fix him upon the clean Litter, take of the Saddle and Body-cloth, rubbing him down, and cleanſing him as before; after which put on the Cloths, girt them gently with Cirſingles; and for the eaſement of his lying down, put Wiſps between of looſe and ſoft Hay or Straw: Being thus cloathed, pick his Feet, and ſtop them with Cow-dung, caſting into the Rack a ſmall bottle of Hay well tyed up, it being well duſt, and let him tear it out at leaſure, whilſt he ſtands on his Bridle.

Your Horſe having ſtood for the ſpace of an hour, rub his head well with a Hempen-cloth; and having cleanſed the Manger draw his Bridle, and take about three pints of large white Oats well dreſſed, ſweet and dry, free from light Oats or ſuch as are defective; for the preparing of which, you ought to have a ſmall Wire Sieve: Theſe being given to your Horſe and if with a good ſtomach he eat them, you may give him a quart more, and ſuffer him to reſt till towards noon; at what time

time run over thoſe parts the Cloth covers not, with a Rubber; and having cheriſhed him with your hand and voice, give him a quart of Oats more, doing the like at One and Three of the Clock in the Afternoon; or if it be in the Summer-time, you may ſtay till four; and when it is near Sun-ſet, having rubbed and clad him at all points; as in the Morning lead him forth and Air him upon hard level ground, not too ſubject to ſtones; Gallop him gently; Water him in due order, as has been obſerved, and bring him home; in like manner, when you have obliged him to ſtale and dung, dreſs him, cloath him, and ſuffer him to ſtand on the Bridle till ſuch time as he has torn out of the Rack a ſmall bottle of Hay, at what time give him another quart of Oats, the Manger being made clean, and leave him till about nine of the clock the ſame Evening; at what time coming to him again, cheer him with hand and voice, Rouſe up his Litter, and giving him another quart of Oats, leave him to his repoſe till the next Morning, and ſo order him every day for the firſt Fortnight, daily increaſing his Exerciſe, and keeping the Stable as dark as may be, both for his quiet and the better obliging him to feed; and by ſo doing you will find the advantage.

CHAP. VII

Heats; what they are, and how to be managed to the beſt advantage, in Racing and all other Recreatory Undertakings.

IN conſideration of Heats and Exerciſe, they are ſomewhat different, the former being a more violent Courſe than the latter, and therefore twice a week is ſufficient for Heats, the days being as equally diſtant from each other as may be, one of them being obſerved to be on the day of the Week, anſwering the day whereon the

the Race is to be run: Obſerving likewiſe not to give any Heat in rainy Weather, unleſs neceſſity compel you thereto; for it is better to vary hours or days than ſo to do; and on ſuch emergent occaſions you muſt provide your Horſe a Linnen Hood made of thick Canvaſs, with a Bearing on the Nape of the Neck, and covering over the Ears ſo that none but the Eyes and Noſe appear: The Heats you give, in caſe of wholſome weather, being to be given an hour before it is dark, and as ſoon as day ſprings, but not in the dark; for two Cauſes: As firſt to prevent unwholſome Airs; and, laſtly, ſtumbling, tripping, ſlipping, or falling.

The manner of Heating thus obſerved, the next thing to be conſidered is, the manner of Uſage and Diet for the ſecond Fortnight: Touching the firſt of theſe, there needs no great diſtinction between it; and what has been premiſed, only before his Bridle be put on in the Morning, you muſt give him about three pints of the beſt Oats well ſifted; after the eating of which, dreſs him up and Bridle him, Cloath, Saddle, Air, Water, and return him in like manner; only what Hay you give, ſuffer him to take it out of your hand, and let him eat a pretty quantity if he deſire it; and while he does ſo, let him ſtand upon his Bridle; as alſo, draw not the Bitt till an hour after; then having rubbed him all over, give him a quart more of well-ſifted Oats and from this time forward make a Diet-bread to give him with his Oats, *&c.* according to direction.

CHAP. VIII.

How to make the Bread of the firſt Make; and what ought to be obſerved in the Diſtribution thereof: With many other things.

TAke to the quantity of three pecks of good Beans Splent and well cleanſed from the Husks, a peck of good Wheat; mix them well, and grind them into fine

fine Flower or Meal; and having bolted and dreſſed them, make them into Dough, with ſtore of Yeſt and hot Water; break and tread it, that thereby it may prove the ſhorter, which ought to be done in a Kneading-trough; after that cover it with a warm cloth, and ſet it by the fire till it ſwell; then knead it again, and being well moulded, make it up into the bigneſs of three penny Loaves: ſoak them well, and when they are drawn from the Oven turn the bottoms upwards and ſuffer them to cool; and at the end of three days paring off the cruſt, the Loaf being dry and in good order, crumb it amongſt the Oats; but if it be too moiſt or clammy you muſt dry it in ſlices before the fire, or ſuffer it to grow ſtaler, always putting a third part of Bread, ſmall crumbled to the Oats: And on this quantity of Provender ſuffer him to reſt till about eleven of the clock, at what time renew the quantity of Bread and Oats, and leave him again till one in the Afternoon or longer, if the next day be not his Heating-day; but if the next day you intend to give him a Heat, then give him only a quart of the beſt Oats; and when he has eaten them, put on his Bridle and tye him up, not forgetting to rub him, and do what elſe is convenient; as Dreſſing, Airing, Watering, bringing him home and putting him into the Stable; where having let him ſtand a while, give him a quart more of Oats; and then having a clean Muzzle, waſh it in Beer, Ale or White-wine, put it on to prevent his eating the Litter or gnawing the Manger or Rack-ſtaves, if he be prone to ſuch Vices, and let him ſtand till nine of the clock at night.

The beſt Muzzle for Summer is that which is made of ſmooth large Pack-thread or Whip-cord, well knit, yet ſo that the Horſe may freely breathe through the Lattice: And the Winter Muzzle, the beſt is of Canvas, with a ſquare Lattice of Tape at the bottom both of them having convenient Loops and Strings to faſten them about the Napes of the Horſe's Neck. The hour of

of nine being come, having well rubbed your Horſes Head, and other convenient parts, as have been often mentioned, give him a quart of clean ſifted Oats; and when he has eaten them, put on his Muzzle, toſs his Litter, and leave him to reſt till the next Morning; and then coming to him, if you find him lying, give him a quart of Oats, not diſturbing him till you find him diſpoſed to riſe, which he may be obliged to by the further Allurements of Provender; and theſe Oats you may waſh in Ale or Beer, and afterward dry them by rubbing between a Cloth, and then dreſs him, and putting on the Bridle and Body-cloth, lead him forth, after by drawing up his head to the Rack, you have obliged him to ſwallow a new-laid Egg, and waſhed his Mouth with a ſmall quantity of Beer; and after he has dunged or ſtaled upon the foul Litter, Rack him gently to the place you intend to courſe him, ſuffering him, as you find him diſpoſed, to ſmell at Horſe-dung or Straw, if any lye in the way, which will oblige him to empty himſelf; and then finding him ſomewhat warm, take off the Cloaths, and ſend them away, Racking him gently to the ſtarting-poſt, and beyond it, obliging him to ſmell to it, and then by degrees put him on to a three quarters ſpeed, obliging him if you find him able, to hold it throughout; that is from the Weighing-poſt, to the Poſt at the other end of the Rack: But in this caſe do not force him above his ſtrength and wind but bear with his yielding, which will make him take pleaſure in what he does; and ſo by degrees he will come to perfection, obſerving upon what ground he takes moſt delight to run, and carries his Legs beſt, whether moiſt or dry, ſandy or ſtony, hilly or ſmooth, which may turn to your Advantage in the Race.

Having heated your Horſe, breathe him again by gentle Galloping about the Field, till you find he begins to cool; at what time your Servant bringing the Cloaths, put them on under ſome warm Hedge, to ſhelter

ſhelter him from the Wind, and ride him gently home; or you may, if he ſweats much, ſcrape off the moiſture with a broken Sword-blade, or piece of a Scithe, before you cover him, and rub him with dry cloths, not bringing him to the Stable till you find he is thorowly dry, and moderately cool, and that he have well emptied himſelf, and then ſuffer him to ſtand upon his Bridle tyed to the Rack; and having the following Scowring ready prepared, give it him in a Drenching-horn, *viz.*

Take a pint of the beſt Mallaga, and pulverizing an ounce of Per-roſin, put it therein: which being incorporated, add ſix ounces of Olive-oyl, and an ounce and a half of brown Sugar-candy beaten to Powder, with an ounce of the Juyce of Savin or Powder of Rhubarb: heat them over a gentle fire, and then by that means mixing them well, draw up his Head to the Rack, and oblige him to take it: by which means he will be eaſed of the molten greaſe and foulneſs.

CHAP. IX.

Other things to be taken notice of, in regard to the Running-Horſe, in the ſecond Fortnight's Dyet and Ordering.

YOur Horſe being thus uſed, great care muſt be taken that he catch not cold; to prevent which, you muſt rub him well, and keep him warm clad, combing out his Mane, his Tail, and the like; keeping the Stable cloſe and putting large Wiſps under his Cirſingles, and over them a looſe Blanket or Coverlet, if the Weather be any thing cold; and let him faſt two hours or better after he has taken the Scowring, keeping him ſtirring or moving all the time to prevent his ſleeping; which in this caſe he will be apt to do, and thereby prejudice himſelf.

Your Horſe having ſtood the ſpace of two hours, &c. give him ſome Ears of Wheat to chew upon, and ſo by the

the extraordinary beating and motion of his Body the ſhortneſs of his Breath, and dullneſs of his Eyes, you may perceive that the potion has met with abundance of bad Humours and groſs Crudities, with which it ſtruggles; and if ſo, you muſt forbear till the Sickneſs it will occaſion be over; at what time take off his Bridle, turn up his Litter, and ſuffer him to lye down and eaſe himſelf for the ſpace of an hour; then rouſe him, and let him tear a ſmall bundle of Hay out of the Rack; in the mean while dreſs him a quart of Oats, and a pint of Splent-beans: mix them together, crumbling amongſt them a ſlice or two of the before-named Bread, and then ſuffer him to reſt for the ſpace of three hours; and in the Evening, before you dreſs him, give him again the like quantity of Beans and Oats, cloathing him up warm, but neither Saddle nor Ride him forth that Evening, nor give him any Water till the Potion has thorowly done working, only let him have another parcel of Beans and Oats waſhed in Beer, and ſo continue till Morning.

When day appears, dreſs him, and let him have a quart of Oats only, then Cloath, Saddle, and gently ride him abroad to Air him, and let him drink, but not over-much, leaſt after ſo long a drought he ſwell himſelf: And when you return him, let him be fed with Oats, Splent-beans and crumbled Bread, in all to the quantity of two quarts, ſuffering him afterward to tear a little Hay out of your hand: and ſo continue him the ſecond Fortnight, and he will increaſe in firmneſs, fleſh, and ſtrength.

CHAP

CHAP. X.

The Running-Horſes third and fourth Fortnight; and what is to be obſerved therein, as to Diet, Uſage, and bringing the Horſe to the Weighing-Poſt, &c.

THe third and fourth Fortnight's Management being material, I ſhall therein come cloſer to Particulars: And in this caſe your care muſt be to make him a ſecond Bread, finer than the former, but after the ſame manner in all reſpects; which being well dried and chipped, crumble it into his Oats and Beans; and that it may exceed the other in fineneſs, you may add as much Wheat as Beans, *viz.* half a buſhel of each, ſuffering him to take his Heats on the proper days with eaſe and pleaſure, not over-ſtraining him, thereby to render him ſtiff on the Racing-day.

The thing to be next obſerved, is to omit the further Scowring, after you have given him other Heats, and in lieu thereof, give him a Ball made after the following manner, *viz.* Take Fenugreek and Cardamum-ſeeds, Anniſeeds and thoſe of Cummin, Colts-foot and Elecampane-Root, of each two ounces: and having bruiſed them, and ſifted off the Huſks and groſſer part, add two ounces of the Flower of Brimſtone, and one of Licoriſh Powder: moiſten them with White-wine, and add more an ounce of the Chymical oyl of Anniſeeds, Moloſſus and Olive-oyl, of each half a pint, and incorporate them with as much Flower as will make them up into Balls as big as Pullets Eggs, and keep them in a thick Glaſs, or well-glazed Pot for your uſe, they being good for a Horſe on ſundry other occaſions; as for Colds, Coughs, Glanders, Stoppage of the Stomach, or ſhortneſs of Breath, in caſe of molten Greaſe or crudy Humours; and thus you may paſs him over the third Fortnight with good looking

to, and a due obſervance of Heats, Airs and Diet: From which I proceed to the fourth and laſt Fortnight, for ſo much time is ſufficient to bring any Horſe to perfection.

In the fourth Fortnight obſerve to let his Bread be yet finer, as allowing three Pecks of Wheat to one of Beans reducing it to the moſt imaginable fineneſs by bolting and other ways dreſſing, lightning it up with a ſufficient quantity of new Ale Yeſt, Whites of Eggs and new Milk: working them to the beſt advantage, and baking them as the former, and give it him crumbled amongſt the beſt Oats well ſifted, and well rubbed between your hands; as alſo Splent-beans freed from the Husks: Nor muſt you give him any Scowring, neither augment the potion of his Meat. As for his Heats the firſt Week you may give him two, but the ſecond week one is ſufficient, and that ſome five days before he is to Run; yet to ſupply the defect of the other Heat you may give him ſtrong Airings for the better preſervation of his Wind, and to render him the cheerfuller; as alſo to remove groſs fumes and vapours, you may Morning and Evening burn any ſweet Perfume in a Chafing diſh of Wood-coles in the Stable; as *Benjamine*, *Storax*, *Frankinſenſe*, or *Olibanum*, and often waſh his Oats in Ale or Beer: And the better to corroborate him, give him every other day a new-laid Egg in a Glaſs of Muſcadel, and debar him from Hay, unleſs his Belly be very looſe.

The laſt Week obſerve if he be a foul feeder, to Muzzle him, unleſs at ſuch times as you are with him, leaſt by eating his Litter, biting the Manger or Rack-ſtaves he injure him, or neglect his Diet; and above all, let your Stable be ſo kept, that neither Pigeons, Hens, or any Fowl can come to dung in it; and the day before he is to Run, let him have his proportion of Meat in the Morning; but in the Afternoon, take away a third part, and Shoe him to advantage; as likewiſe

likewiſe preſs him well, breading his Mane, Tail, and do other neceſſary things of ornament, but with that caution that he may not take diſtaſte thereat.

The Morning the Match is to be Run, come to your Horſe before it is well day, and give him a quart or three pints of Oats ſprinkled with Muſcadel or Whites of Eggs but if he refuſe to take them, then you may give him dry Oats, with a third part Wheat well ſifted and ordered, and entice him what you can to empty himſelf; and ſo putting on his Muzzle let him remain till you have notice to bring him forth in order to run the Match.

The Warning being had, take of the Muzzle, and put on the Snaffle, it being waſhed in Muſcadel; then rub him ſleek, and caſt a white Linnen-cloth over him next to his Body, and over that the Horſe-cloths; lay on them the Saddle well pitched with Shoe-maker's Wax, of which the Girths muſt likewiſe participate, and Girt it gently, ſo that he may not be ſtraitned; give him after that a Mouthful or two of Oats, and pour down his Throat half a Pint of Muſcadel, with the yolk of a new-laid Egg, and ſo draw him out of the Stable, leading him to the Courſe, uſing by the way your endeavour to make him empty. When he is arrived at the Weighing-Poſt, waſh his Mouth with fair water, rub his Legs and other parts, and then uncloath him, and clap on your Saddle; then mount and wait the Signal; when ſtarting fair, obſerve well your ground, and commit the reſt to the goodneſs of your Horſe; and thus, Reader, have I laid down the moſt approved Rules and Methods of this kind, which being put in practice and well obſerved, will doubtleſs turn to great advantage, and may indifferently ſerve in preparing a Horſe for any other occaſion or employment. And ſeeing the Management of the Rider is very material in this and other caſes, I ſhall not think it amiſs to give directions of that kind in the following Chapter, with other matters.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

What the Rider ought to be; and what by him is to be considered in order to Backing and good Management; as also the Office and Duty of a Groom, &c.

AS it is not every one that is fit for a Rider, relating to Management and curious occasions; so it ought to be considered who is, and what his chief care must be, that he never spoil nor baulk a Horse in his first Breaking, or in Racing; for such things too frequently happen, and thereby render altogether fruitless the care, pains and cost of the Breeder, and create such Vices in the Horse as will not easily be removed; and therefore your Rider must be a temperate and patient person, not given to fury nor anger, one of a strait, upright body, of an indifferent weight, not too heavy nor too light, by reason the one may render young Horses in Breaking sway-backed, and the other regardless of him that sits him; he must in his Function be laborious and diligent, a lover and herisher of Horses; one who rises early to practice, and is not given to immoderate Exercising; and when the Horse maketh a default, he must use his diligence to let him see it, and thereby render him tractable; or if the person be hasty, rash and cholerick, soon provoked to impatience, he can never make a perfect Horse-man, neither can he be able to make a Horse perfect, as otherways he might. If a young Horse of the right strain for shape, breed, and colour, be well handled, he seldome fails to answer the expectation of his Master; when on the contrary, he may be spoiled, and be found good for nothing but the Plow and Cart: And this is often occasioned in a young Horse by the too much rigor of the Rider or Breaker, by which the Horse is so confounded and over-feared, that he is not capable of understanding; or else Breaking through

that fear, grows reſtiff and ſullen; when, on the contrary, ſweet words and mild behavour wins ſo far upon a good natur'd Horſe, that in a ſhort time he will take pleaſure and pride in performing the Will of his Maſter; and when he readily does ſo, or at leaſt offers as far as his underſtanding will reach, he ought to be cheriſhed and incouraged, not only with words, but with ſome pleaſant and heartning morſel, which the Rider ought for that purpoſe to carry about him; at leaſt let him ſpurt ſome Wine, or other comfortable Liquor, into his Mouth; and never correct him but when he is in a fault; always conſidering to ſtrike him in a convenient place, but not about the Head, leaſt he dull him, or give him opportunity to be hardned in the Vice of going backward; nor with your Legs and Thighs preſs his Ribs too hard, leaſt his burthen become uneaſie and unpleaſant, ever conſidering in a ſtrait Courſe to keep a ſteady and even Rein, not inclining to the right, nor to the left; and alſo an upright Body, unleſs in a full Courſe; at what time a little ſtooping forward, but not ſo as to preſs your weight on the Horſe's ſhoulders, will not be amiſs, for that will prevent gathering the Wind; the which, though it be unperceived by many, is a great hindrance to the ſpeed of the Horſe. As for your Switch in ſuch caſes, it muſt be carryed upright, or over the Horſe's head, that he may not ſee it, to affray him; nor decline your Body from the one ſide to the other to overſway him, but in all things obſerve a moderation and mean, being ever ſure to have your ground in your eye, and thereon manage your Horſe to the beſt advantage; as alſo which Ground he delights to tread, which in a Race may profit much; for it has been ſeen that many a good Horſe has been baulked by not being managed in ſuch Ground as they naturally affect.

As for the Office of a good Groom, it chiefly conſiſts in keeping his Stable ſweet, clean, and warm ſtored, with

with fresh Litter, by frequently renewing the old, having your Horses Cloaths, Furniture, and Materials, ever in a readiness; in being expert in the convenient times and manner of Airing and Feeding; knowing what Provender, and what quantity is seasonable and sufficient; and above all, to be exact in Dressing and Furnishing out for Ornament, as occasion requires, minding what Saddles and what Bridles are most fitting and convenient, and taking care to place them in due order, that they may be in a readiness when ever they are to be used: He must be a Man temperate and free from passion; one who aims at his Masters interest and his own credit; such a one as has skill in Horses, and can discern the Grievances or the Symptoms of Diseases, always having Instruments ready to search the Horses feet, or Blood him, upon necessary or emergent occasions; and in case he see any imminent danger, he must not delay giving notice thereof to his Master, or the Farrier, last by neglect the Horse may grow past cure; or when a Horse is returned from a Journey heated, or the like, must not neglect him, but ever be careful to Rub him well down; give him good Litter, clothe him well, and let his Provender be proportionable and seasonable: for if a Horse be newly taken up from Grass or Soil, an excess of dry Meat will prove injurious by subjecting him to Lasks, shortness of breath, Costiveness and Pains in the Stomach, as his suddainly being turned from hard Meat into rank Pasture will cause Laxativeness, Scowrings, Pains in the Belly, Rawness of Stomach, and offensive Rheums: And thus much may suffice for the Office of the Groom, who, as to the feeding of a Horse, may take further directions from what has been spoken of the Dieting the Race-Horse.

And now, seeing every Gentleman has not the conveniency of Breeding good Horses, or Mares, by reason of the situation of his Dwelling, or want of

opportunity to regard them as he ought, I think it highly necessary to give such Instructions and insight, as may render every Judicious Man capable of purchasing without being defrauded.

CHAP. XII.

Infallible Rules for buying a good Horse; and how so well by sundry marks and tokens to distinguish good from bad, as well in case of Soundness, as Diseases, as thereby to prevent being imposed on, or cheated, &c.

IN the Election of a good Horse many things are to be observed, and especially to what end you design him when purchased; for certain it is, that no one Horse, how perfect soever, can serve to all ends and purposes. Then for the goodness of his breed, it is very difficult to be known but by speculation, unless you will take it upon the credit of those that had the breeding of him, in which you may run a hazard; for few Sellers will disparage their own: However, this you may observe, that according to the Country this distinguishment is infallible: If he be of a *Spanish* breed then is he small and neat limb'd; if *Neapolitan*, hook-nosed; if *Dutch*, rough-legged; if *Barbary*, neat bodied and headed; if *Flemmish*, full and smooth buttocked; if *English*, well-set and strongly joynted; and so for others. Now the Colours are various, according to the Constitution of the Horses Body, and by those elected according as it likes the fancy of the Buyer; though there is difference in goodness, to be known by the Colours, as the Horse participates more or less of the several Elementary Humours: And thus they are held.

The Cole-black, without any mixture of other co-

lours

loured Hairs is subject to Choler, and the heat thereby occasioned, inclines him to *Pestilence*, *Feavours*, *Inflammation* of the *Liver*, and other hot Diseases: To prevent which, Purges that correct the Cholerick humours are very convenient; and Horses of this complexion of a fierce and firey nature, good for War and Travel; but by reason of the heat, which consumes the moisture that should support them, they live not, or at least, last not long.

A Horse of a bright Bay, or dark Bay, with a clear and chearfull Countenance, and a well-proportioned Mouth is counted a lasting one, and fit for Racing, Hunting, or Travel, and is of a Sanguine Constitution; as also are the white-flanked or flea-bitten, white Loyard, with Hairs like Silver, or black, with a white Star, white Foot, or white Rash; and the Diseases these are most subject to, are Consumption of the Liver, Glaunders, Leprosie, and such like disorders as are taken by Infection, or Contagion; wet and foul feeding in damp Weather, and the like; and will endure stronger Medicines than the former, without any danger, if they be not compounded of such Ingredients as will over-heat the blood.

A Horse that is very white, pye-bald, yellow, dunkile glew'd, and the like, are Flegmatick and fittest for Cart and Plow, or to labour in Mills, *&c.* not being capable of speed, or at least not forced to hold it long; and are subject not only to lose their flesh, but to Staggers, Coughs, Catarrhs, cold Distillations, Rheumatisms, and the like disorders, proceeding from watry Humours; and therefore in case of such disorders, hot Medicines are accounted the best and most successfull.

The Dark Bay, with long white hairs, Russet, Ash-colour, Chesnut, Grey or Mouse-Dun, are accounted Melancholicks, and are subject to Inflammations of the Spleen, Droplies, Frensies, Oppression of the Heart, and Pains in the Stomach; wherefore being of a

dry Constitution, cold moist Medicines are requisite to be Administred, and are generally heavy and lumpish; but if it happen you find a Horse with some or all of the Colours, the latter being very rare, then conclude, that the four Humours predominate by turns. And though these Observations are made for distinctions sake, yet it is found by Experience, which is the best Master, there are good Horses, or at least tollerable good of all these kinds: Therefore not any ways to discourage the Buyer, or prejudice the Seller, that which follows ought duly to be considered.

If you purchase a Horse for ease and gentleness, though to Travel considerably, then the most fitting is an Ambler; then observe in the moving of his Legs, that he performs it equally, smooth, large, just, and nimble; for if he tread false, he will prove uneasie; Treading short ridds little Ground; if he tread rough or uneven, he seems to roul or tumble along.

If Hunting be your aim, especially that of the Buck, or for the riding Post, or the like, wherein a large Pace is required; the running or swift Amble, as some call it, is very necessary and expedient, differing from the other Amble only in the swiftness, and is altogether easie and delightful.

As for the Trot, or as some all it, the lofty Pace, it most propperly belongs to War-Horses, though indeed it may indifferently serve to any other end; and those that Trot well seldome fail to Gallop: In which case observe that the Horse take up his Legs nimbly from the ground, yet not raising them over high, nor rowling his Body from side to side, that he beat not himself, if he forcibly laboured, or do it in pain, but that stretching out his fore-leg, he nimbly follow with the hinder; nor by any means Cut under the Knee, which is called the Swift-cut: Further observing that he neither crosseth one foot over or upon another, but with his far fore-foot ever leadeth, and not with the

the other. If theſe qualities are found, then is the Horſe good for ſpeed; but if he Gallop roundly, raiſing ſtrongly his fore-feet, he is fitteſt for a Charging-Horſe, or one to be truſted in carrying his Maſter through a dangerous Attack. If his Gallop be ſlow, ſo it prove ſure, he may make a good Traveller; but if he handle his Legs confuſedly or ſhufflingly, then beware of ſome defect, eſpecially if he Gallop painfully.

As for the Stature, that I leave to every Man's Diſcretion, as his occaſion ſutes or requires; the largeſt being for ſtrong and ſolid labour; the middle-ſize for ſwiftneſs and long Journeys, if not over-burthened; and the leſſer ſize for eaſe and moderate Recreation: And what more remains materially to be known of this kind, is the deformities and imperfections, that is, how to diſcover them; and theſe are contained in natural and accidental Deformities, inward and outward; many of them hidden, and ſo ſecretly couched, inſomuch that they may well deceive the skilfull: And of theſe, eſpecially of ſuch as are moſt dangerous or materially to be known, I ſhall acquaint you.

Firſt obſerve and inform your ſelf what you can, as to the Breed and Paces of the Horſe; when having taken off the Saddle and Bridle, leaving a Halter only upon his head, cauſe him to be rubbed down well, and ſtand juſt before him, earneſtly beholding his countenance, whether it be chearful and ſprightly, free from cloudineſs or ſcowling; that his Ears be ſmall, ſharp, thin and plyable; and though they be inclining to longneſs, yet if they be well proportioned and well ſet on, it is not much amiſs, for his freeneſs, beauty, and goodneſs of Mettle are thereby declared; when, on the contrary, if they be loleing, thick, heavy, dull and clouterly, weakly ſet on, and ſeldom moving, dullneſs and a heavy diſpoſition are denoted. If the Forehead of the Horſe ſwell, and the feather or mark ſtand high above his Eyes, or on the top of his Eyes;

if it happen he have a white Star, or white Blaze, even-ly placed, of an indifferent size; or if it be a snip on his Nose, it is a mark of Beauty; but if his Face and Forehead be flat and cloudy, they are tokens of dull-ness and defect; if the Star or Ranch be awry, or low it is unseemly; or the Nose instead of a snip, be bald it signifies badness, and a Horse not fit for any con-siderable service; if the Eyes be brown, black, shi-ning, staring or standing out, and move with an equal motion, the black of the Eye filling the fleshy Orb so that little or nothing of the white appear, then is it a sign of goodness, and a well-mettled Horse; but on the contrary, if the Eyes move slow and uneven, and the white greatly appear; if they seem cloudy or dull, then is it a sign of badness, and the like, if they seem wrinkled, or are very small; if they be of a fiery red, they incline to Moon-blind or Moon-eyes, which are but a remove from blindness; if the Eyes be white and walled, it denotes a weak sight; if very bloody, inclining to blackness, bruises are thereby signified; Red, dull Eyes, and a hollowness, fore-run blindness; if the Eyes Matter, and much Rheum flow from thence, then the Horse has been extremely abu-sed by over-riding, or else is very old; and so of the rest.

When you come to handle the Horse's Cheek or Chaps, if there you find the Bone thin and lean, the Wind-pipes or Throple full and large, even, and free from Knobs or Kernels, and the Jaws standing even, so that the Teeth shut like a Box; and above so pla-ced, that the Neck may seem to shut or sink into them, it is a sign of a free Horse, and one of great Wind and Courage; but, on the contrary, if his Chaps and Cheeks be thick, fat, and suddenly inclined, the Throple small, and muffled up with a thick gross substance of fat, (then especially if it appear much kernally) it not only signifies *short Wind*, but threatens the *Glaunders*, *Stargles*, and other Diseases incident to straitness and pursiveness; and more particularly dangerous *Colds* of many natures. If

If it happen the Jaws be ſo ſtrait, that the Neck ſwell over them as it were; yet if it be occaſioned by no Diſtemper, it matters not much as to the ſervice of the Horſe, though it is very unſeemly; but if it ſwell out long, and end taper, then the Horſe may be ſubject to the *Vives*, Tumours. Impoſthumes, or the like: Then obſerve that his Noſtrils be wide, large, open and dry, and that the Redneſs naturally appears without any forcing or ſtraining: If the Lips are even, the Mouth deep, and the Muzzle ſmall, they ſignifie good wind, ſpeed, and courage; but if on the contrary, dullneſs and infirmity; as alſo by the ſhortneſs of the upper Lip, and wrinkles on the ſide of the Mouth old age; and above all, obſerve his Teeth be clean, even, firm, and well proportioned. But of them more particularly hereafter, when I come to ſpeak of the Horſe's Age, though, in general, unſeemly and un eaven Teeth are a ſign of badneſs.

Obſerve the Breaſt of your Horſe; and if it appear broad, bowing outward and well feather'd, it denotes health and ſtrength; when on the contrary, a ſmall Breaſt, ridged or flat; as alſo the Shoulders ſtanding in, denotes ſtoppage, weakneſs in travel, pains of the Heart and Liver, and the like, with ſtumbling and interfering; as alſo does a Breaſt that is narrow and imbowed inward; thoſe being generally the marks of a Horſe weak, and unfit for labour.

Next caſt your Eyes from the the Elbow to the Knees, and ſee his fore thighs be well proportioned, ſtrait, and well clad with fleſh and ſinews; by which ſtrength is ſignified, and by the contrary, weakneſs.

Obſerve the Knees, that they are carried even, that they be well joynted, cloſe knit and fixed, with Sinews and Ligaments free from Scabs or Scars, not over round, but well joynted, and boned; for if they appear contrary to theſe marks, as round, and ſwelling of a more than ordinary bigneſs; if they be ſcabbed, broken, or the hair off, then it betokens an

uneven treader, and one that is apt to ſtumble, or ſubject to the ſwift cutt.

Having thus far taken notice, the next thing to be obſerved materially, is from the Knee to his Paſterns and there conſider, if the Legs be clean, well fleſhed and well ſinewed, bowing ſomewhat inward, which ſhews ſtrength and a firm treader; but if on the inſide you find any fleſhy Excreſſences, or Scabs, a little beneath the Knee on the inſide, likewiſe then is the Horſe ſubject to interfering; but if a general Scab, &c. then the cauſe is foul keeping; if on the inner bowing of the Knee you perceive Scams, or the hair broke disorderly, a cankerous Mallender is denoted, or Ulcer.

Obſerve that the Paſterns be clean and well knit toegther, eſpecially the firſt, and the other ſhort and ſtrong, ſtanding upright; if the firſt be large or ſwelled, then is the Horſe frequently ſubject to the Sinew ſtrain, and twitching girds; or if the other be weak or bending, it will hardly ſupport the body in any long Journey or uneaſie way.

As for a good Hoof, it ought to be black, tough, and much inclining to roundneſs; for a long, white, rough or brittle hoof, denotes an uneven tread, a tripping or loſing the Shooe upon every occaſion, and is altogether unſeemly, and fore-ſhews the Horſe ſubject to foundring. As for the Crownet of the Hoof, obſerve if the fleſh ſwell a little, and that the hair lye decently and in good order, that no Scabs nor boney Excreſſences happen there; for if thoſe appear, ten to one but the Ring-bone will afflict it.

Thus having obſerved your Horſe in the front, place your ſelf on the right ſide of him, and obſerve that his head be neither too high nor too low; that his Neck at the ſetting on be ſmall, and indifferently long, growing deeper by degrees, till it arrive at the ſhoulder; then for the Creſt let it be high, ſtrong, and and ſomewhat thin; his Mane ſomewhat curling, thin, long, and ſoft. Theſe are not only Signs of a

good

good Horſe but a Beauty alſo; and conſequently the contrary of deformity.

In the next place, have a regard to the Chine of his Back, that he have a due proportion of even, broad, and ſtrait; his Ribs ſomewhat large, and bending outwards like a bow; his Fillets ſhort ſtrong and upright, about four fingers diſtance from his laſt Rib and his huckle-bone; his Body being well let down yet hidden as it were within his Ribs; his Stones round and even hanging; and theſe are marks of beauty and perfection: Whereas on the contrary, a narrow Chine will ſubject the Saddle to wound the Horſe, and bending or Saddle-back'd denotes weakneſs; to have the Ribs over-fat, makes the Horſe breathe painfully, when hard laboured. If his Fillets hang long and thin, they denote him weak, and not capable of performing a Journey in a hilly Country; and if his Stones hang down, as in long bags or purſes, uneven and unſeemly, it denotes a defect in nature occaſioned either by Sickneſs, or a feeble Conſtitution.

As for his Buttocks, note that they be round, full and plump, and that the Tail be well ſet on, the beſt obſervance being the evenneſs of the Buttocks with the Body; and that although they are ſomething long, that they ſpread well behind, and are not inclining to make a ridge of the Crupper-bone, nor ſtand long and narrow; for in ſuch caſes neither a Pillion not Pad-ſaddle can ſit eaſie nor convenient.

The hinder Thighs commonly called the Gaſcoins, are likewiſe to be regarded; and the obſervation is, that they be well let down in an evenneſs to the middle joynt, thick, brawney, full, and ſwelling, by which ſtrength and goodneſs are to be obſerved; whereas a lean and lank Thigh not well griſled, but very ſlender, denotes weakneſs: Then obſerve the middle joynt behind, and ſee that it be ſomewhat lean, well knit and ligamented, and Sinews well veined, and moderately bending, which ſhews perfection

in that part; but if it have any Chops or Sores in the inward bending, then it threatens a Sellender; and if it have a general ſwelling, then ſome blow or bruiſe has happened again; if the Swelling be particularly in the pot or hollow part, or on the inſide, and there it happen the Vein be full and proud, and the ſwelling moreover ſhort, then is it the Blood-ſpavin; if hard the Bone-ſpavin; but if it happen behind, on the Knuckle, then is it a Kerb or Curb.

After this look on the hinder Legs, obſerving whether they are clean, well fleſhed, and ſupported with Sinews: If ſo, it is a good ſign; but if they be fat, they will not endure labour; and if they ſwell, it is a ſign the greaſe is molten in the body of the Horſe, and that he is foul: If ſcabbed above the Paſterns, then beware the Scratches; if under the Paſterns Chaps appear, then it is the Pains: All which are infectious and dangerous to the Horſe, and render him far from being good.

As for the Tail, it ſeldom ſits amiſs upon a good pair of Buttocks; and on the contrary, never well upon ill ones; but the beſt ſetting on is broad, high, and flat, a little couched inward. And theſe Rules for knowing and chuſing a good Horſe, may generally and particularly ſuffice, though in the ſequal many more will occur.

CHAP. XIII.

Exact and Infallible Rules to know the Age of a Horſe by the perfections or imperfections of his Teeth, in all their particular and general Marks; as alſo by the Tail; when the Mark is out of the Mouth, &c.

TO know the Age of a Horſe, there are ſundry things and matters to be obſerved beſides his Teeth; though by them moſt take their Rules, though not altogether infallible; yet that nothing may be want-

wanting on this occaſion, I ſhall deliberately diſcourſe of Particulars, beginning with the Teeth, the better to comply with cuſtome.

The full number of a Horſe's Teeth are computed forty, and ſeldom, when he has all that he will have, prove leſs: And thus they are diſtinguiſhed, *viz.* On either ſide, above and beneath, ſix great wang Teeth, which compute at twenty four, generally termed Grinders; then ſix above, and the like number below, in the fore part of his Mouth, which, with the other, make thirty ſix. theſe latter being properly called Geatherers: and moreover four Tuſhes, two above, and the like number below, generally called Bite-teeth: And from theſe the Conſiderations are as follow.

In the firſt year only the Grinders and Geatherers, commonly called Colts-teeth, only appear ſmall, white and ſmooth,

The ſecond year two of thoſe Teeth are changed in the middle of the Geatherers, *viz.* one above, and another below; and as for thoſe that come up in the room of the ſhead ones, they are generally darker or browner, though they may be diſtinguiſhed other ways by the largeneſs.

The third year, the next to thoſe before-mentioned, are changed, leaving the reſt to be changed the ſucceſſive years, ſo that after the fifth year no Colts-teeth, and then likewiſe his Tuſhes are compleat; and thoſe that ſucceed the laſt Foal's Teeth will be hollow, having in the midſt of them ſmall black ſpecks, of which many take ſingular notice, ſhaping their Judgement thereby; though if they take not heed, they may be impoſed upon by Artificial as well as Natural ſpecks or ſpots, though indeed by theſe Natural Spots a Horſe's Age may be known till eight years are paſt, and no longer.

The ſixth year being come, his new Tuſhes ariſe, at the bottom of which young fleſh will appear, the Tuſhes

Tuſhes being ſmall, white, ſhort and ſharp, and ſo continue to the ſeventh year; in which year they are of full growth, and the Mark very plain to be ſeen and obſerved.

The eighth year all the Teeth will appear plain and ſmooth, but the Specks, generally called the Marks, will decreaſe by degrees, till they are ſeen no more, ending as it were with or before this year; nor will the Tuſhes continue longer white, but incline to a yellowiſh.

The ninth year being come, and the Mark conſequently no more to be ſeen, conſider the fore-teeth will be broader and longer than uſual, their Colour inclining to a yellowiſh paleneſs, and the Tuſhes to bluntneſs.

The tenth years age may be known by the filling up of the holes within ſide the Tuſhes, which were before like cells or hollow pits; as alſo his Temples will be crooked or diſtorted.

The Horſe being arrived at the eleventh year of his age, the moſt material thing to be known by the Teeth is their diſtortion, yellow colour and unſeenlineſs; as alſo their more than ordinary length. Now as for the twelfth, and generally held to be the laſt year, a Horſe's Age can be known by the Teeth; your obſervation muſt be taken from their largeneſs, foulneſs, and hanging over each other; and though ſome have held, that by the cloſe wearing of his Tuſhes to the chops his Age may be further known; yet let me adviſe the Buyer, that he may not be deceived therein, that being no certain Rule or Mark, eſpecially to rely on. And thus much as to what relates to the knowing a Horſe's Age by the Teeth; from whence I proceed to his Mouth in general: And that which I infer from thence is this.

If upon having regard to a Horſe you perceive his Teeth and Lips hang over, uneven or unpleaſant, unleſs it proceed from ſome Diſtemper in the Head, or diſorder in the Body, then is that Horſe old. Ob-

Obſerve you find not too deep a burning for the *Lampus*, that ſo the Provender may be apt to ſtick therein to his hindrance in feeding; and that the ſpaces between the barrs are not too deep and hollow of themſelves, for that denotes Age, but that they be pleaſantly fixed, ſmooth and ſoft.

As the Eyes are, if ſprightly and well fixed, a great ornament to the Horſe, ſo if other ways, they render him uncomely and deformed; wherefore the defects ought to be conſidered, *viz.* If upon view you perceive the Eyes to be ſunk, dim, or hollow-pitted, the Temples crooked or wrinkled, then old Age is ſignified: But if the contrary, *viz.* If the pits be full, the Eyes lively, bright and ſparkling, the Temples ſtrait and ſmooth, then is the Horſe young.

If you miſtruſt a Horſe's Age, and cannot well find it according to the former directions, then apply your feeling to the Tail; and if there you find two knobs near the Settting-on, each about the bigneſs of a Musket-bullet, then you may conclude your Horſe to be very young; but if the Joynt thereabout be plain and ſmooth, no ſuch ſign or token appearing, then conclude him to have paſſed the tenth year; and ſo by thoſe knobs, proportionable to the bigneſs, conſider his years.

Other Conſiderations there are to be had from the Hair and Skin, as if you perceive any Hairs that are griſly about the Eye-brows, eſpecially if the Horſe be of a dark or contrary colour; or if ſuch be found underneath, the main Age thereby is ſignified: The like if a white Horſe, or one very light coloured, happen to have black or red Mannals. As to what is to be obſerved from the Skin, let this be a Rule: If the Horſe be old, the Skin you raiſe between your thumb and finger will ſtand in a pucker, and not ſuddainly return to its place: But if young, it will fall flat almoſt as ſoon as let go. Nor is the Hoof to be altogether neglected in this caſe; for if you caſt

cast your Eyes upon a Horse whose Hoofs are crinkled, seamed, rough or unseemly; or if they be brittle, and subject to break or crumble, then is the Horse old or infirm. And thus much may suffice as to Age, unless somewhat that will occur by the way in handling other matters of the like nature.

CHAP. XIV.

How exactly to know the State or Condition of a Horse's Body relating to Fatness or Leanness, Health or Sickness; with many other things worthy of note.

HAving bred up, or purchased a good Horse, there is nothing more necessary than to keep him well; but especially look narrowly to the state of his Body, so well informing your Judgement in the Symptoms of Diseases, as at all times to be able to discover the least defect, as to what relates to his health, or hinders his flourishing: And the better to enable such as are minded to turn their Studies this way, I shall lay down such Rules as have upon all, or most emergent occasions, proved effectual: which take as followeth.

If you find your Horse in a drooping condition, if he refuse his Meat, and be heavy or dull-eyed, seem uneasie, standing, or restless lying down, then conclude some inward griet or defect afflicts him, not to be so easily discovered as some have conjectured: Wherefore I shall first point my Directions at the state of a Horse's Body in General, and from thence to Particulars; beginning the better to give the Reader an insight into the rest, with the strong Estate, or healthfull Constitution of a Horse, &c.

As

As for ſome Horſes, though they are in health and good temper yet by reaſon of their roundneſs and well-compacted body, the Buyer may have a lean one put upon him inſtead of fat one, un'eſs he be skilfull in handling and trying, thereby to diſcover his want of fleſh or feeble Conſtitution; and ſo a Horſe that is long and full-made may ſeem lean to the Eye at a diſtance, when really he is in good caſe; or a fat Horſe may likewiſe deceive the expectation of the Buyer, by having contracted inward fatneſs and foulneſs, which will require time and labour to avoid and bring away; when on the contrary, ſome Horſes will be fat without, and in good caſe, yet be clean within, and free from groſs humours; and others again though outwardly appearing lean, will be inwardly groſs and foul; and theſe proceed from the Order and Conſtitution of the Horſe, &c. And this is to be known upon ſearch, by demonſtration, ſundry ways, as to what is outwardly to be taken notice of.

Firſt feel the Horſe's body in all the advantageous places, but eſpecially upon the Ribs; and in ſo doing, if you perceive a general ſoftneſs of the fleſh or looſeneſs, ſo that your fingers eaſily ſink into it, then conclude a foulneſs within; or if it be hard and firm upon all but the hindmoſt Ribs, then ſuſpect Molten-greaſe within, which muſt be voided by Purging or Scowring; though at the ſame time the Horſe appear poor and lean, or elſe he cannot well be reduced to a good ſtate of body; and the better to make the Potions operate, is to prepare him for them by Exerciſe, that being moved and ſtirred, it may the eaſier be brought away.

If ſo it happen, as has in ſome manner been ſaid, that the Horſe appear ſo fat and thick, that the ſpace between his Chaps is as it were cloſed up, or the Jaws upon handling prove fleſhy and full, then much foulneſs in head and Body is ſignified; but if upon handling he happen to be thin and clean, though ſome

hard

hard knobs or kernels be contracted, yet that may rather proceed from a Cold taken, than from foulneſs, &c. But to come to Particulars.

If the Horſe's Dung appear of a pale, whitiſh, yellow Colour, not too hard, yet ſo that in falling it only flats a little, but do's not break in ſunder nor crumble, and be not of a rank noiſome ſcent, then is the body of the Horſe free from inward foulneſs: but on the contrary, if it be of a black or muddy colour, hard, like pellets, yet hot and greaſy, it betokens foul feeding, and a neglect in the Keepe of not giving him a due proportion of Corn, but rather feeding him with Hay in over-abundance, or ſuffering him to feed foul by eating his Litter, &c. denoting he has likewiſe Molten-greaſe within him that cannot come away without ſome Artificial helps. If the Dung be of a reddiſh colour, and hard, it ſignifies the Horſe has been over-heated or over-ſtrained, and therefore ought to have a Clyſter of cooling Simples to cool and open his Body, thereby preventing Sickneſs, or at leaſt Coſtiveneſs.

If the Urine be of an Amber colour, ſomewhat inclining to thickneſs, of a ſtrong, yet not offenſive ſcent, then it denotes a healthfull conſtitution; but if it be ruddy or high-coloured, hot and ſcalding, ſo that the Horſe makes water with pain, or does it by degrees, then has the Horſe taken hurt by being over-heated, or in being ridden too ſoon upon being taken up from Graſs: If ſo it happen the Urine be of a high colour, yet very clear, like Beer, well ſettled, then is it occaſioned by Heat or Inflammation, cauſed by a Surfeit.

If a white film or ſcum happen to be upon the Urine after ſettlement, it denotes the Horſe weakned by too much Venery; and a Mare by too often Breeding, too furious a Luſt, and conſequently not very fit for ſervice, by reaſon of the weakneſs of the back. Green Urine denotes a Conſumption of the Body; and

and that with bloody ſtreaks or ſpecks, not much unlike to a mattery ſubſtance, denotes an Ulcer, or the like defect in the Kidneys: And further, a Lead-coloured, groſs and cloudy Urine, denotes a dangerous ſickneſs, if not Death it ſelf. And thus much as to what is to be known in Relation to Health and Sickneſs by theſe Excrements.

And now let us conſider a little, if a Horſe be out of order, how thoſe that attend him ought to carry themſelves towards him, in relation to his Diet.

Let him obſerve in this caſe the Diſpoſition of the Horſe, and not violently thruſt or intrude the Provender upon him, but conſider to give him what he beſt likes, and that at leaſure and by degrees, winning him with mildneſs and ſweet behaviour; and bewaring, above all things, not to give him any offence, encreaſing the quantity as you perceive him deſirous to take it, giving him white water to drink, and ply him as you ſee occaſion, with warm Maſhes; warming his Water with a little Bran duſted over it, if the weather be cold; and be ſure to ſuffer him to be in a warm Stable, with clean Littter and good Dreſſing.

If your Horſe be any ways ſubject to lameneſs, beware in your Courſings or Heats you avoid craggy or ſtony Ground, or forcing him too much againſt a Hill. Other things there are to be obſerved of this or the like kind, relating to the ſtate of a Horſe's Body, as to the knowing by ſundry other matters and tokens: But as for them, I refer you to the following Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Obſervations to be taken as to the ſtate of a Horſe's Body from the Privy parts, Limbs, Feeding, and many other Matters and Diſcourſes, worthy to be taken notice of by the Curious, &c.

THE Privy-parts of a Horſe, as to ſickneſs and health, are much to be obſerved; and this eſpecial notice to be taken, *viz.* That if he be a Stone-horſe, his Cods hang even, and his Stones well truſſed up, firm and round, which ſhews him in good heart, and fit for buſineſs; when, on the contrary, if they hang long, or bagging down, a weak Conſtitution is thereby implied: Nor is it leſs to be obſerved by the Yard of a Gelding, or Shape of a Mare. But for brevities ſake, waving farther particulars, I ſhall proceed to take Obſervations from the Limbs, and what in caſe of defect, ought to be done on that occaſion.

In caſe you intend to Run or Travel your Horſe, if you find his Limbs ſtiff, or not ſo plyable as you would have them, or as ordinarily they happen to be; then to render them ſupple and pliant, Melt Hogs-greaſe and Oyl of Chamomile, and dipping a Woollen-cloth hot into the Liquids, anoint or bathe therewith the Legs or Thighs from above the Knee, and from the Cambrels downwards; or, for want of theſe, Neats-foot Oyl; after which chafe it in with your hands; and in often ſo doing in all places where you ſee occaſion, you will wonderfully reſtore his Limbs, rendering them ſupple and plyable.

There are many things to be obſerved from the Sweating of a Horſe, eſpecially from that which proceeds without External force, occaſioned by hard labour, or the like; for then is the Horſe faint, foul fed, or wanteth

wanteth Exercise to evaporate the abundances of watery humours which he hath contracted: And especially this is to be noted, when his Sweat is white and froathy, like a Lather of Soap; but in case of Heats, and other considerable labour, to create Sweat; if it appear black and pearly, like clear Water, then is the Horse in a good plight or habit of Body, especially if he be lively and brisk, not in the least afflicted with any shaking or trembling; for that infers the Sweat forced out by some Internal disorder, rather than naturally evaporated.

And now seeing the causes of Sickness are very material to be known that is, from whence they arise, that so the Skill in curing may be the greater, and the Remedies to be applied more powerful and certain in their Operation; as also the Causes of health and long life, take for your better Experiment what you find in the subsequent Chapter.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Elementary parts of a Horse's Body, and of the Agreement of the Humours therewith. A discourse of Corruption and Generation; in which is set forth all things of that kind, relating to Goodness or Badness, Health or Sickness, &c.

CErtain it is, that no Man can truly pretend to Experience of this kind, unless he duly weigh the Nature of Generation and corruption, for on them, as on the Colloms of this Art, stand what is materially of this kind; these two being ever consonant in the main; though one Horse's body may differ in Constitution from the other; for these being the Superlative of Elementary subsistance or matter, fail not to operate in their turns, or, as Nature disposes them, in their places and degrees

grees; and therefore it will be highly convenient to discover them in their Parts and Particles.

As for the Body of a Horſe, it differs not in the Elementary compoſition from that of Man; for of all the Elements it conſiſts, *viz.* Fire, Air, Earth, and Water, which are indeed the Generatives and Conſumers of all Mortal things and beings; and although theſe Elements are different in themſelves, yet are frequently agreeable in the Compoſition; for the Fire, though hot and dry in it ſelf, yet compounded with the other Elements in a Mortal frame, or bodily compoſition, diffuſes a gentle heat to nouriſh and ſupport life. Though the Air is hot and moiſt, but more participating of the latter, yet does it temperate the heat of the former, and gives a kind of reſpiration and gentle breathing to refreſh and exhilerate each Part and Particle The Earth, though it is in it ſelf groſs and ponderous, yet in this compoſition is it rarified, and by its ſubſtantial matter compoſes the frame wherein the reſt of the Elements cohabit; and being cold and dry, ſerves to temperate the hot and moiſt. The Water, though cold and moiſt in it ſelf, ſerves in this caſe to moiſten and render plyable the Sublunar Works of Nature, and enables them to ſubſiſt: And of theſe four Mothers of Creation participate more immediately the four humours, of which the Bodies of Animal and Rational Creasures are compoſed, as *Choler*, *Blood*, *Melancholly*, and *Phlegm*; the firſt of Fire, the ſecond of Air, the third of Earth, and the fourth to Water. And as theſe more or leſs operate, ſo, according to their qualities, is the Body moved and expoſed to heat, cold, moiſture, or dryneſs, and conſequently to the effects they produce; for theſe have their principal Dominion in the Seats of Life, and from thence extend their power and force to every part and member. As thus *Phlegm* poſſeſſes the Brain, *Choler* and *Blood* the Liver and Heart, and *Melancholly* the Spleen, which is the Recepticle and Conveyancer

of

of the Excrements of the Liver, all of them having distinctly and conjunctly their proper Office assigned: As thus the Blood is the principal nourisher of the natural frame, Phlegm or moisture renders the Members flexible and compliant in motion and use. Choler causeth digestion by its Operative heat; and Melancholy disposes to an Appetite, and attracteth the grosser parts of Nutrimental Elements, and occasioneth the disburthening of Nature.

It is generally agreed on by the Learned, That every Organical Body is supported by Four principal Instrumental Members; and these are held to be the *Brain*, *Heart*, *Liver*, and *Genitals*, these performing their particular offices and functions: For as the Sinews are supported by the Brain, the Seat of Animal Spirits; the Arteries from the Heart, or seat of Vital Spirits; the Veins, which are natural parts, from the Liver; so the Seminal Vessels are supported by the Genital Parts or Instruments of Generation; and these conjoyntly operating, are the Elementary Substitutes, as participating of their Nature, & consequently the Materials of Generation.

Thus having briefly discoursed of the Elementary Parts of the Bodies of Creatures, I now proceed from the four Humours, Elements, and Instrumental Members, to the Natural faculties; which in this case are the next things to be considered, which are Eating, Retaining, Concocting, and Expelling; and though all the Humours are Instrumental in promoting these, yet principally Nature serves her self but of only one to work upon, and that is a wheyish kind of Blood, generated in the Liver, or attracted thereby from the purest part of such Nutriment as has been concocted in the Stomach, and from thence conveying it self to the Liver; and through the great Vein, conveying Nutriment into all its branches, and consequently into all the parts of the Body, by dispersing the rarified Blood into every part, which, by the help of the other Humours, supports the frame of Nature. As for the watry

watery part of nourishment, and that of the grosser substance; the one is carryed into the Bladder, and the other passing into the Bowels, are in the end cast out of the Body to make room for more of the like nature. But moreover, there are two Veins that conduct part of the purest and rarified matter into the Seminal Vessels, where, by the operation and contraction of the Generative Parts, it is refined by a gentle heat to a more spirituous quality, and so in the end becomes Seed, which, according to the goodness or badness mixed in the Womb, proves effectual or ineffectual; for note, that if the thin and subtil Blood be wanting to support the Seed, and enliven it with heat, it frequently fails in performing its Office, and the Horse becomes fridged and uncapable of performance, and is often subject to moist Diseases; as the Glaunders often proceeding from the Liver and Lungs when they are infected with putrefaction, occasioned by moist Rheums, and other indigested Moistures descending on them, or Inflammations occasioned by Lumps, Knots or Kernels under the Chaul, proceeding from cold or immoderate labour, and many times the Morning of the Chine by a Horse's immoderate Leaping a Mare, or overstraining himself in the action: And this may likewise happen by his eating too much raw meat, or drinking upon a suddain heat, and many other ways; which, when I come to treat of Diseases, I shall largely discourse on. But first I shall proceed to let you know how Horses ought to be used, to prevent their contracting Diseases as much as in the superficial Schemes of Art the greatest Artists of this kind have allowed; and the means are chiefly five, as Cleansing, Blood-letting, Purging, Sweating, and Vomiting.

The first of these may be said to be two-fold, as outward and inward; the first being by cleansing his external parts by care and good dressing, which ought the more dilligently to be observed upon his being taken up from Grass; and the time limited for that, by

taken up from Graſs and the time limited for that, by the curious, is *Bartholomew*-tide, for then the heart of the Graſs beginneth to decline. And this may be done in the manner which I have often recited in what relates to Dreſſing; nor is it at all inconſiſtent with Reaſon, that the cleanſing the Skin from duſt and dirt, and looſening it in every part by gentle rubbing, ſhould enliven the Horſe, and render him more ſprightly; ſo that nature having her free courſe and progreſs without reſtraint, may operate in diſperſing kind refreſhment to every part, and keep thoſe groſs humours from ſettling, that are frequently the original of Diſeaſes and Grievances; and ſo if it happen that your Horſe be miery and foul, then may you uſe Fulling-earth, Soap, and other ſcowring Materials, eſpecially with warm Water; but then having an eſpecial care he catch not cold thereupon, keeping him warm, and well drying him till he be thorowly cold; and in ſo doing you will prevent thoſe moiſt Diſeaſes wherewith he is otherways afflicted: And the better to effect this, cut away all the ſuperfluous hairs that any way annoy the body, or other parts, *&c.* And ſo being ſhooed and neatly dreſſed, I leave him to the Second Part, which conſiſts in the Internal cleanſing and purging Directions; for which, in conſideration of more immediate or particular Directions, take in the following Chapter.

CHAP. XVII.

How a Horſe ought to be uſed in general and particular, as to his Phyſick, Diet, and Looking to, for the preſervation of him, even to old Age.

THough I have named what I intend to propoſe in the foregoing Pages; yet let not the Reader,

conſidering the conſequence and validity of what I ſha
here propoſe, think it amiſs that I ſelect a Chapter fo
no other purpoſe; and that the advantage may neithe
be delayed, nor appear ſmall in the Eyes of the Reade
or Practitioner, take a proſpect of it in the followin
Directions.

As for inward Purging, the meaſures ought to b
taken from the temperature of the Horſe's body, an
more eſpecially in caſe of his retirement at ſuch
time, that no hard labour or immoderate exerciſe h
been impoſed on him: And in this caſe, if you fin
him coſtive, or that in caſe of Evacuation, nature hel
not, as in uſual caſes, let ſome one with a ſmall Ar
penetrate his Fundament, and draw thence the Dun
that obſtructs, or at leaſt clogs the fluent or natur
paſſage, that ſo both the natural and artificial Motio
and Cauſes proceeding from the Drugs, or compoſition
Purgation, may operate and perfect their intende
deſign, and may be beſt adminiſtred Clyſter-wiſe
But then conſider the conſtitution of your Horſe;
he be fat, and ſomewhat inclining to foulneſs, it mu
be a ſtrong potion that will effectually operate; b
not ſo if the Horſe be weak and melancholly. B
waving 'em here, I ſhall ſpeak more particularly
them in due place; as alſo of Drinks which ought
be made, and ſeaſonably given for the preventi
ſickneſs, and preſervation of health; and if you fi
the Blood coagulated, which may be perceived by t
trembling of the Veins and the working of it the
in, then it is requiſite to let him blood, and gi
him a gentle Vomit to carry the foulneſs from
the ſtomach, that may be the occaſion of bad digeſ
on, and conſequently the naughtineſs of the Bloo
Dieting him with Maſhes and fine Provender, fr
which may ſpring ſuch wholſome nutriment, as m
create a thin and airy Blood; rubbing and often
nointing his Body with Hogs Lard, or Ointment
Marſhmallows. And now to be ſatisfied what thin
moſt

moſtly contribute to health, take the following Opinions of the Learned, *viz.* A good natural conſtitution, good digeſtion, good nouriſhment, moderation in feeding and diet, moderation in labour and ſleeping, moderation in leaping Mares. Again, wholſome Airs, not laboured too ſoon after Graſs, to be kept from raw Meats, not to drink nor eat being hot, ever obſerving to walk him at the end of any Journey, and not to Phyſick him unleſs you find occaſion. And theſe obſervances being the occaſion of long life, I ſhall endeavour, for the better ſatisfaction of the Reader, more fully to demonſtrate them.

As for Nature, good Digeſtion, and ſound Nutriment, they ought to be conſonant, and indeed they are well proportioned, when neither the moiſture with its humidity is not ſo predominant as to quench and over-power the heat, nor the extraordinary heat too ſuddainly conſume the moiſture, though of neceſſity the latter muſt be of force above the former, or elſe Digeſtion cannot be perfected as it ought; and in that caſe ſeaſonable nouriſhment muſt conſequently fail.

Moderation in Eating is another main cauſe of long life, as immoderate Eating is of a ſhort one: For as exceſs in Eating, though the Provender be never ſo good and wholſome, obſtructs good digeſtion, and contracts crudities with a bad habit of ſtomach; ſo on the contrary, ſpare Diet weakens and decays Nature, and infeebles the natural powers and faculties of Life, giving the heat by that means a power abſolutely to ſubdue and conquer the Radical moiſture and gives Diſeaſes an opportunity to break in upon the infeebled body, which prove many times too hard for the Farrier; for in all Creatures obſerve, that the weaker Nature is, the ſtronger is the diſtemper.

Another cauſe of health and long life proceeds from moderate and kind labour, for by indifferent motion digeſtion is much forwarded, and the humours diſperſed, being by that means prevented from ſettling more

than is requiſite in any one place; beſides, it is the cauſe that Excrements are ſooner voided, which by lying down in the Body might occaſion ſickneſs. And further obſerve, that he be not laboured upon a full ſtomach, ſo as by overſtraining, digeſtion may be hindred, which ſhould turn to nutriment; and lay a foundation for Diſeaſes by indigeſted Crudities, being too ſuddainly drawn into the Veins, and by that means diſperſed into all parts of the Body.

Another cauſe there is of the like nature that depends upon the moderateneſs of ſleeping and waking; for too much waking is an Enemy to health, by ſpending the vital Spirits that ſhould ſupport and maintain life, and a decaying that moiſture that ſhould refreſh the ſeveral parts of the body, cauſing thereby Leanneſs and Barrenneſs, a dulling of the Brain, and a defect in the Lungs and Liver, whoſe offices it weakens by decaying the vigor in the performance; and contrary to his exceſſive ſleeping, dozes the brain, hinders digeſtion and obſtructs nature in the performance of her offices, contracting noxious vapours and a foulneſs of the ſtomach.

Another thing to be conſidered is, that your Horſe be not admitted to ſpend himſelf too much upon Mares, becauſe ſuch immoderae Exerciſe weakens the Brain, Back and Eyes, waſtes the Vital Spirits, and often ſhortens the days of many a brave Horſe; and therefore if you would have your Horſe laſt long, let him not cover above three or four Mares in a year at the moſt; or if your conveniency will not at all times admit you to keep him from them, then Geld him whilſt young: for it is ever obſerved that a Gelding lives longer naturally than a Stoned-horſe, and a Mule than them both, becauſe he is not ſubject to generation.

Wholſome Air above all things, is to be choſen, ſuch that rarifies the blood, helps digeſtion, and comforteth the Vital ſpirits; when as groſs Air or evil Scents not only ma-

make the Horse loath his Provender, but corrupt the Blood, and subject the whole body to diseases.

Travelling after Gras too soon, without purging and cleansing the Horse's body, cause the bad humours to incorporate, or by spreading themselves to afflict each part with pains and disorders, reducing the Horse to a dullness of temper and disposition, and so raw meats engender raw flegmatick humours, afflicting the Stomach and Brain, occasioning the Glaunders, Coughs, Catarrhs, Stavers, Yellows, Anticors and Morfoundring, not only disable the Horse, but if neglected, become incurable but by death,

Another cause there is, and that not to be lightly regarded, which is, not to suffer your Horse to eat or drink when hot, and to stand thereon, for by so doing the Blood will corrupt and putrifie, occasioning Surfeits, Feavers, Obstructions, and many the like Maladies and Grievances, frequently occasioning death: But as soon as you bring him home in that condition, put him into a warm Stable without washing; Rub, or cause him to be well rubbed down; Cloath him well, and let him have a sufficient quantity of warm Litter to stand on; and if he be subject to eat it, put on his Muzzle and so let him stand an hour or more till his grease be sufficiently cooled, and you'll find him in a fit condition to give him his Provender: And lastly, that he may be well breathed, and sound winded, thereby being enabled to hold out as occcasion shall require, you may at seasonable times mix with his Provender the Powder of these following Seeds and Drugs, *&c. viz.* Cummin and Annieeds, Powder of Licoras and Elecampane-Roots, Barberries, Brimstone Flower, and the Roots of white Lillies, Hyssop, Horehound, Savin, Coltsfoot, the Seeds of Marshmallows, Rue, and *Polipodium* of the Oak, and any of the like quality that will occasion good Wind, and prevent Infections, purifie the Blood and help the Liver in the performance of its office,

that is to rarifie the nutriment by a good digeſtion; but you muſt not mix over-much at a time, eſpecially when you firſt begin it, leaſt he take diſguſt at the ſcent or taſte, and ſo reject his Provender; but increaſe the quantity by degrees, not giving him any above twice a week, and then let it be Morning and Evening

CHAP. XVIII.

An exact Deſcription of the Veins of a Horſe, how ſituate in the Body; as alſo of Blood-letting; and how, and upon what account of Sickneſs or other defect, they are to be opened, for the prevention of death or danger.

HAving thus far diſcourſed in Generals and Particulars of what relates to a good Horſe or Mare of any ſort or kind, that thereby the Reader might inſtruct himſelf; I ſhall proceed to what yet remains material to be known, eſpecially to Farriers, and ſuch who undertake the Cure of Horſes; which is to give an account of the ſeveral parts of the Body, ſo as they may be diſtinguiſhed as occaſion ſhall require, but eſpecially of ſuch parts as ſhall be found moſt uſefull on immergent matters, and the Veins, being the pipes or conduits that carry off the Blood, and conſequently nutriment to all parts of the Body, I think it highly convenient to ſay ſomething in the firſt place of them.

From the Liver note there ariſeth one large Vein, which, like a conduit, ſupplys the reſt of the branches which are many in number, and ſpread themſelves throughout the Body like little Rivolets or ſtreams: And of theſe, two material ones are found in the Palate of the Mouth, above the firſt and third Barrs, which ought to be opened by a diſcreet Farrier, when the Horſe is afflicted with any Malignant pain,

or

or diſeaſe in the Head or Stomach. Two more there are that are deſcending, which, from the lower part of the Eyes, deſcend to the Noſtrils, and are beſt opened when the Eyes are afflicted with any diſtemper or grievance. Two others there are above his Eyes, which are called Temple-Veins, becauſe they run croſs the Temples; and theſe are generally opened for cold diſeaſes in the Head. Two great ones there are likewiſe that run along the Wind-pipe, by the ſides of it, from the uppermoſt Joynt of his Chaps, to the Breaſt, commonly called Neck-Veins; and theſe are opened for ſundry diſeaſes, being the moſt uſual Veins that are opened. There are two other Veins that ariſe from between the fore-legs, and are called Breaſt-Veins, becauſe they end on the top of the Breaſt; and theſe are opened in caſe of Surfeits, Feavers, or Hearts ſickneſs. Two others there are which aſcend from the fore-legs, but riſe not ſo high as thoſe before-mentioned; and theſe reſt upon the foremoſt bough of the fore-leg, and are generally called Plat-Veins; and are opened in caſe of Foundering, or any other grief or grievance in the Legs or Limbs. Other two there are which paſs from the Elbow of the fore-ſhoulder, down along the inſide of the fore-legs, being known by the name of Shank-Veins, which are generally opened in caſe of Splents, Spavins, Mallenders, or Sallenders, *&c.* Then are there four Veins which run along the Fetlocks of the Horſe, known by the name of the Shackle-Veins; and theſe, although they are ſmall, are yet important ones, and by bleeding cure the ſtiffneſs of the Joynts, and prevent Foundering. Then are there four more about the Corronets in his Hoofs, called Corronet Veins, and are opened for the Ring-bone and Surbating. In the Hoof are four more, which circle his Toes, called Toe-Veins; and are opened for fretting and foundering. Two great Veins there are, that deſcending from his Stones, paſs along the inſide of his Thighs,

to his Cambrils; and theſe are called Kidney-Veins, and are opened with ſucceſs for diſeaſes in the Reins and Kidneys. Two others there are, which, deſcending from above the hinder Cambrils, paſs along on the inſide of the hinder-legs down to the Fetlocks, being called the Spavin-Veins, and are ſeldom opened, unleſs in caſe of the Blood-ſpavin. Two veins are likewiſe found in his Flanks, from whence they take their denomination, and are opened ſucceſsfully for any pain or grief in the Fillets or Reins Two Veins he has in his Haunches, called by the name of Haunch-Veins, and are opened in caſe of falling away, or conſumption of the Fleſh, Hideboundneſs, or the like. Two there are that run along the ſide of the Belly, from the Elbow to the Flank, and are called Spur-Veins; and in caſe of fretting, belly-foundring, ſpur gall, feſtring, or ſwelling of the belly or flank, they are opened with ſucceſs. In his Tail is one ſingle Vein, called the Tail-vein, which is opened in caſe of ſheading the Hair, ſo that in all there are found, as a compleat number of principal Veins, or as from which Blood is taken on ſundry occaſions, thirty-ſeven; in knowing which, any Man may underſtand how to let his Horſe blood, in caſe of the before-mentioned Diſtempers, at ſuch times as a Farrier is not at hand. Many other ſmall Veins there are, but ſo inconſiderable to our purpoſe, that I ſhall not undertake them in this place, but proceed to ſpeak ſomewhat of the Sinews, which is another Material part of this noble Creature, worthy to be inſpected.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

A Diſcourſe of the Sinews and their Situation with their Uſe and Office; and what in that kind is to be obſerved as to the State of a Horſe's Body, &c. *with a Deſcription of the Bones*, &c.

SEeing the Sinews are the principal Ligaments that ſupport the frame of a Horſe's Body, and ſo convenient to be known, in order to the remedying ſundry griefs and diſorders, it will be highly neceſſary to ſpeak of them in their order, and eſpecially of ſo many of them as are the principal movers of the Body.

As for the fountain or ſource from whence the Sinews ſpring, and by which they are nouriſhed, it is the Brain, for there paſſes through the hollow of the Neck one large Tendon or Sinew, which Running along the back-bone, continues it's courſe even to the end of the Tail: And from this proceeds two ſmall branches, which paſſing through the Scull, fall down along the Horſe's cheeks to the points of the Noſtrils. Two other Branches there are which paſs through holes in the nether Chap, knitting it with the other, and ſo paſs along by the great Teeth, meeting juſt beneath the nether lip. Then are there twenty-eight ſmall ſtrings, that running through the ſeven Bones that compoſe the Neck, knit them together; and paſſing from thence, uſe their office in knitting; likewiſe the Chine even to the Strunt. Then are there two great ones that ſtretch themſelves over the Spade-bones, and then dividing into divers branches, ſpread in a deſcending manner into the Legs, even into the Hoofs, and in their progreſs knit every Joynt together. Beſides what I have named, there are two main Sinews coming through two holes to the flat bones of the Hips or Huckle; and from thence being

divided into many branches, paſs down into the hinder legs, even into the coffin of the Hoofs, binding all the Joynts firmly together. Now above all theſe, there is one main Sinew or Ligament proceeding from the ſetting-on of the Horſe's Neck, which paſſes along the Chine, and is one intire Sinew of near three inches broad, being in its Nature flat, and not having any branch proceeding from it: And this is the great ſtrengthener of the Back and Neck of any Horſe and holdeth the Shoulder-blade firm; ſo that in all, its reckoned, a Horſe hath no leſs than thirty principal Sinews, whence a great number of other Sinews do proceed of leſſer note. But theſe which I have named are ſo uſefull in ſupporting the frame of the body, that if any one of them are afflicted, the Horſe will be much afflicted, *&c.* And now the next thing material to be known of this kind is the number of Bones, and their ſituation; which according to the beſt account that has been given, take as followeth.

The full number of Bones found in the body of a Horſe are a hundred and ſeventy, *viz.* the upper part of the Head are computed two bones; from the Forehead to the Noſe are two more; the nether Jaws are computed two Bones; the four Teeth are found to be twelve, and the Tuſhes four, and the Grinders twenty four; the Bones in the Necks, from the Spade-bone to the Huckle-bone eight; from the Huckle-bones to the end of the Tail are accounted ſeven: Next, or at leaſt next to be conſidered, is a broad bone in which are found twelve Seams or Joynts: Then the two Spade bones, and after them the Forcales or Canale-bones, and ſubſequent to theſe, thoſe that are commonly called the Marrow-bones, and from thence to the Knees two called the Thigh-bones, next to them two others, proceeding from thence to the Paſterns, called the Shank-bones, and ſo downward into the Hoof; other Bones, called the Supporters, in all ſixteen, though ſome of them are very ſmall. In the

Breaſt

Breaſt there is a great Bone, whereunto thirty ſix Ribs, great and ſmall, are appendances; and to the Colume behind are fixed two Bones, and from the Molars to the Joynts you will find other two Bones, and two more towards the bending of the Ribs; from the bending of the Ribs, unto the Ribs, are two Bones, though very ſmall in compariſon of thoſe we account Capital ones; and from the Legs to the two Focils of the Legs, are to be found other two little Bones. And moreover obſerve, that from the Paſterns to the Hoof, and in the Hoof are ſixteen little Bones: All which are ruled and governed by Ligaments and tends on to the beſt advantage or complacency in the frame of nature, and are neceſſary to be known as to the frame and ſtation where in they reſide, or are ſituate. From which I proceed to the Art of *Phlebotomy*, or letting Blood, and the ſeaſons and diſtempers that require it, &c.

CHAP. XX.

Of Blood-letting in general; and how to know by ſundry ſigns and tokens the ſtate of a Horſe's Body; when and where it is convenient to let him Blood, for the preventing of Sickneſs, or recovery of Health.

IN conſideration that Bleeding is held by many, and thoſe none of the worſt Experienced, to prevent diſtempers and diſorders in Horſes, if the times and ſeaſons are rightly obſerved, and the Diſeaſe according to what has been mentioned, I ſhall not fail to give Inſtructions of all kinds any way way tending or relating to this matter, ſo far as may conſiſt with any purpoſe or what thereby is intended to the good or advantage of a Horſe: And of theſe Directions in their order.

To let a Horſe Blood too often, decays Nature, and much weakens the Horſe; when on the other ſide, too

too long to defer it, gives corrupt Blood an opportunity to create Diſeaſes that infect and afflict him; if it be done for healths ſake, without any ſign of apparent danger, then is twice in a year ſufficient: The times beſt approved off for this office, are the end of *December*, and the beginning of *May*. Now ſome are of opinion, that there is no need of letting a Stone-horſe Blood, if he be uſed to cover Mares, unleſs ſome diſeaſe be apparent; and the reaſon they give is, that his ſpending does exhauſt his Blood ſufficiently: But ſuch a reaſon is very weak, conſidering the Blood of which the Seed is made, by the working and operation of the Genital Parts, is the moſt ſpirited, and pure of all other; and that which ought to be taken away, by Blood-letting, is commonly the moſt groſs and offenſive, ſo that it will never turn to Seed but corrupt by continuing in the Body, and create Diſeaſes; and therefore ought it to be drawn off, that the Veins being emptied, may fill with better Blood; nay, Blood-letting is coveted naturally by ſome Horſes; for the Horſes of *Poland* often let themſelves Blood by often rubbing againſt a ſharp Poſt or Rock: And ſo does the River *Horſe* in *Nilus*, from whoſe Example 'tis held, that Phlebotomy or Blood-letting came in uſe. Others there are that will not have Geldings let Blood; and the reaſon they give is, that his Body, through the loſs of his Genetors, being infeebled, wants the Blood to ſupport and corroborate it; and that conſumes faſter in him than in a Stone-horſe: But this bears no weight, for her Blood will increaſe according to the conſtitution of the Horſe and his feeding, and according to the heat or coldneſs of the Country the Horſe is bred in, the leſs or more Blood is found in him.

The next Material matter to be regarded, is, the exact time when it ought to be performed; and moſt hold it beſt in the Morning when the Horſe is faſting

ing, an hour after he wakes or rouſes up: And then again have regard to the Moon, it being in the encreaſe, if poſſible, but by no means in the Sign where the Vein is ſituate that you open, leaſt thereby your Horſe be weakned, for then the Vital ſpirits will iſſue with the blood. And another regard is to be had to his Age; for if he be very old, you muſt not bleed him, unleſs upon ſome emergent occaſion, but ſuffer his Blood to nouriſh him, that his fleſh may not wain or decreaſe And in all theſe caſes you muſt have regard to a Horſe's conſtitution, for ſome are more capable of loſing three pound of Blood, than others are two or one; or in caſe of a Diſeaſe according as more or leſs is required, as the Blood is more or leſs infected; and in ſuch a caſe no time nor ſeaſon is to be regarded, but as neceſſity requires; for many times Blood-letting in ſuch caſes is a means to ſave the Horſe, as deferring of it is to the deſtroying of him: And in theſe or the like caſes it ought to be known in what Diſeaſes it is requiſite, and that it may in the general be diſcovered by theſe Signs, *Viz.*

If the Horſe's Eyes look red, and his Veins riſe and ſwell beyond the ordinary bounds, then is he oppreſſed with too much Blood, or at leaſt that which is not good. If you perceive by his Itching, ſcrubbing himſelf, and uneaſineſs, that there is a ſalt firey humour contracted in the Veins, then let him Blood; which is more immediately known by the extraordinary ithcing of the Mane and Tail; by rubbing of which, the Hair frequently ſheds, and the Skin peels off. If his Urine be red and high-coloured, and his Dung very hot, black and hard; if on his Back there appear little Bubles or Inflammations red and angry; or if his Meat be not well digeſted, then they denote the Horſe to abound with Blood, and ſtand in need of having it drawn off to a degree, that his health may be preſerved or reſtored. If the Whites of his Eyes are tainted with yellowneſs, or the like happen

to

so his upper or nether Lip, it is requisite to bleed him; for upon the happening of any of these Signs the Blood is disordered, super-abundant or corrupted, and some fatal sickness is threatned: To prevent, or at least mitigate which, there is no better way than bleeding. And in the manner of letting Blood, when you have corded your Horse conveniently, that the Veins may appear full and fair, you may strike your Fleam in the Neck-veins four Inches on this side the setting-on of the Head; but the other Veins being small, you must open them with a Lancet, for fear of cutting them through, and so consequently injure the Nerves that support them. And thus much for Blood-letting, and the Signs of Bleeding, *&c.* From which I shall proceed to what relates to Cures of all kinds, whether Internal Diseases, or External Sorrances, after the best and easiest manner and method, according to the approved Rules and Directions of the ablest Farriers and Horsleeches that are, and have been rendred famous for their Skill, not only in this, but in divers other Nations; and withall let you plainly understand the cause of the most Chronical diseases as well as the means to Cure them, rendring the method and manner easie to the Practitioner, and advantageous to those that trade in Horses, and keep them for their profit or pleasure. But before I absolutely enter upon them, there are a few things necessary to be considered, and especially five, *Viz.*

(1.) To inform ones self to what grief or distemper a Horse is inclinable.

(2.) The cause from whence it proceeds, whether External or Internal.

(3) The tokens and symptoms by which the distemper is known.

(4.) By what means the causes accrue that create the distemper.

(5.) How to apply Remedies fitting to the distempers and disorders. And these are so absolutely necessary, that

that without ſuch knowledge a perfect cure cannot be wrought by any Farrier.

And now as for the Diſeaſes and Grievances incident to a Horſe, they are not a few, thoſe that reckon the leaſt, conſent to ſixty of different natures; and, to be plain, there are many more which may be called dependants on theſe, or indeed ſome of them, no leſs dangerous. But ſubmitting to the Judgment of the Learned, I now come to another material Point, which relates moſtly to the Chyrurgical part, or methods to be taken and known in the curing Sorrances, *&c.* which indeed is the moſt difficult; and then I ſhall proceed in order.

CHAP. XXI.

A Deſcription of Diſeaſes, Grievances, or Sorrances, incident to Horſes, &c. *to foreſee them by ſundry ſigns and tokens; and know whence they ariſe; with the ways and methods of Preventing, Redreſſing and Curing them; by Approved Rules and Remedies according to the Practice of the beſt Farriers in all Ages,* &c.

MAny are the terms and names given to Grievances and Sorrances, and theſe frequently take their denomination from the place of their ſituation, relating to the parts of the Body, and chiefly ariſe or proceed from the evil ſtate or habit of the Body, and defect of the Members, eſpecially when there happens a looſning and diviſion of the Unity, or a Diſſonance in the Temperature; and ſo we ſay when any diviſion or looſning happens in the Bone, it is a Fracture; if it happens in the Veins, it is a Rupture; and in the Fleſh, a Wound, or Ulcer; in the Sinews it is termed the Cramp or Convulſion; and in the

the Skin an Excoriation. And now obſerve, that in Cauterizing or Burning, which may be done two manner of ways, *viz.* with hot Oyls or Water, or with a hot Iron; as alſo in making Inciſion, or the like, that they ever be done with caution above or beneath the Vein or Sinew, and never upon them, leaſt by the diſcommodity that may ariſe, the Horſe be rather damaged than furthered: And again, obſerve never to apply to Veins or Sinews any extraordinary Corroſives; and theſe we reckon ſo, are *Arſnick*, *Sublimate-Mercury*, *Reſalgar*, *Oyl* of *Vitriol*, *Tartar*, &c.

In caſe of Cauterizing, ever obſerve rather to Launce with a hot Iron, than a cold one; and rather cauterize than cut, becauſe by the heat the humours are driven back, which would otherwiſe render the Sore or Grief of long continuance; and by the product of a Sore in the Original, you may know the conſtitution of a Horſe; for if he be a ſanguine, a whitiſh watery Excreſſence will flow of an indifferent thickneſs; if Cholerick, a thin ſalt one, inclining to greeniſh; if Flegmatick, a kind of a gellied-water; and if Melancholick, then a groſs blackiſh moiſture, attended, by a dry Scab or Scurf.

In caſe of Swelling or Tumours, it will be neceſſary with heed to mark the place they begin in, as alſo their progreſs and ending, that ſo the part of the body afflicted with bad humours may have Applications ſutable to remove them.

Now if it ſo happen that the Swellings or Tumors be not upon any maſter Vein or Sinew, or too near the Vital parts, then may Repercuſſive Medicines be uſed: but if ſo, then thoſe that are mollifying, to raiſe it gently by degrees, that ſo being ripened it may break of it ſelf; or if neceſſity require it, be Lanced, that the Corruption paſſing away, ſuch things may be applied, that with a Lenitive ſoftneſs may heal the grief.

In caſe the ſwelling be hard, it is generally Corroſive, and muſt have ſuch Medicaments applied: But

If

ſf ſoft, thoſe of a more ſupple nature will prevail, though many happen to be of a long continuance. And now to know whether a Swelling has been of a long continuance, preſs it with your finger; and if the dint continue after you have taken your finger away, then is it old, and of a long ſtanding.; but if the fleſh ſuddainly return, then is it newly taken. If a Swelling or Sore be broken, and moderately matter, then it ſignifies a good conſtitution, and that it mends apace; but if the Putrefaction greatly encreaſe, then it denotes a maſs of bad humours there contracted, which muſt by degrees be brought away; and many times in this or the like caſes is Cauterizing actually or potentially uſed, that is, with hot Irons, or with Liquids, &c. of which I have before ſpoken above or beneath the Sore, to divert or keep back the humour. And now to that which relates to Cures, &c.

CHAP. XXII.

Excellent Receipts for the Cure of Diſeaſes, &c. in Horſes or Mares, according to the beſt Experience of Skilful Practitioners: Many of which were never before made publick.

AS the Cauſes of Sickneſs are many, ſo are the Cures or Medicines wherewith they are redreſſed, and the Signs that fore-run and attend them, which I have given in Generals and Particulars. Yet ſeeing ſomething of this kind may remain untouched, I ſhall take them in the way as I proceed. Now of Sickneſſes there are two kinds; one that poſſeſſeth the whole body, as *Convulſions*, *Feavers*, *Peſtilence*, and ſuch-like general diſorders and contagions, infecting the Blood; and others but a part of the Body, as *Vertigoes*, *Head-ach*, *Yellows*, and the like; yet both many times prove equally dangerous and deſtructive. *The*

The Glaunders; from what it proceeds; and how to Cure it.

The Glaunders is a diſtemper often gotten by over-riding, and ſuddain cooling upon heats; eating too much raw food at unſeaſonable times, or continuing in wet mooriſh ground, proceeding from a flegmatick conſtitution: And this you may perceive before it take too firm a poſſeſſion by a white matter iſſuing from the Horſe's Noſtrils, and his unſeaſonable ſnorting: And this Diſeaſe having its ſeat properly in the Head.

Take of the green Leaves of a Box-tree, an ounce of Anniſeeds, and the like quantity of Licoriſh-powder: ſteep them in Ale or new Milk, to the quantity of a quart; adding Treacle four ounces, and the like quantity of Olive-oyl: heat them well over a gentle fire, and with a horn give the Horſe the liquid part to drink in the Morning faſting, as hot as may be well endured; then give him a moderate Courſe, and bringing him home, let him have a warm Maſh; Cloath him up, and leave him in a warm Stable for the ſpace of two hours before you feed him.

The Quinzey in a Horſe, &c. what it is; and how to Cure it.

The Quinzey is a diſtemper, occaſioned by flegmatick humours, ſetling in the Neck or Throat, ſo that the paſſage of the breath is in a manner ſtopped, and the beaſt obliged to breathe with a more than ordinary pain and labour: To remove them then, and redreſs the grievance, after having bled him in the Neck-vein,

Take Marſhmallows, Groundſel, Cammomoil and Harts-Tongue; bray them with a like quantity of Smallage, and fry them with Hogs-greaſe; ſo being very hot, apply them to the place which ought to be under the Chaul, and they will mollifie the ſwelling, and by degrees remove the obſtruction of the paſſage: Then take Roach-Allum, Honey, and white Dogs-turd: diſſolve them with brown Sugar-candy in a quart of Milk, give it him hot; and ſo continue to do for a week together, Morning and Evening; renewing likewiſe the Poltis once a day.

A Horſe's

A Horſe's Bleeding at the Noſe; how to ſtay or prevent it.

This happens, eſpecially amongſt young Horſes, through the abundance of Blood, that through the free paſſage of the large Veins, aſcends into the Head; and paſſing to the thin Veins within the Noſtrils, either by its violent motion forces them, or by its corroſive quality eats them in ſunder; or it may accidentally happen by a ſtroak or violent ſtraining: To remedy which,

Take the Juyce of Nettles, mixed with Loaf-ſugar and ſquirt it up the Horſe's Noſtrils, uſing at convenient times to burn under his Noſe *Storax*, *Frankincenſe*, or Linnen dipped in *Aqua vitæ*, in a Chafing-diſh, the fume of which will oblige the Blood to retreat: or inſtead of Nettle-juyce, you may uſe that of Garlick, blowing up after it the Powder of dryed Rubarb.

For Pains in the Teeth or Jaws.

Pains in the Teeth or Jaws of a Horſe are created by Wind or cold Rheums that often afflict the Marrow or Sinews which ſupport them; and are often known by the Horſe's Drivelling, holding open his Mouth, and defect in feeding: And in this caſe,

Take a good handful of the Herb Bettony, ſeethe it in a quart of White-wine Vinegar till half be conſumed, then add an ounce of the Powder of Elecampane: waſh with the liquid part, his Teeth and Gums, anointing his Jaws with Oyntment of Tobacco, Lancing the Gums, and opening the Temple-vein on the ſide where the pain is moſt predominant.

The Canker in the Noſe; what it is, and the Remedy

The Canker in the Noſe proceeds from a virilent humour contracted there, occaſioned by Inflammation. To cure this, or indeed one in any part of the Body,

Take of White-wine inegar a quart, Roach Allom two pounds, a pint of the Juyce of Plantane, and as much of that of Rue, with four ounces of Honey: boil them to the conſumption of a third part, and waſh the grieved part therewith as hot as the Horſe will well endure

endure it, morning and evening, and the Canker within a fortnight will decay.

A Remedy for the Collick, Belly-ach, or Belly-binding.

The two firſt of theſe proceed from cold, raw, ſlimy humours, ſettled in the Bowels, there occaſioning a fretting or ſhrinking up of the Bowels, or by a contraction of Windineſs, which ſtretcheth them out; and the latter by exceſſive heat or bad digeſtion. Now to remedy theſe,

Take four ounces of Dill-ſeed, or the Herb it ſelf if it may be gotten; as alſo two handfulls of May-weed: boil theſe in a Gallon of ſmall Beer, with a pound of brown Sugar, and give the Horſe a quart at a time each morning faſting, for the ſpace of four days, ſuffering it to be luke-warm.

The Lasks, or Bloody-flux, and its Remedy.

This diſtemper is an unnatural looſneſs of the Body, contracted either by raw feeding, or a fretting of the Bowels, cauſed by cholerick and firey humours, and a ſuperfluity of bad blood; which not being ſtayed in time, will, for want of other Excrements, cauſe the Horſe to void Blood. To cure this,

Take a good handfull of the Herb called Shepherds-purſe, and two ounces of the Seeds of Woodroof: ſtamp them, and boiling them in three pints of Ale till it come to a quart, ſtrain out the Liquid part, and give it him hot in a Drenching-horn, continuing ſo to do for three or four Mornings ſucceſſively.

The Botts, what they are, and their Cure.

The Botts are a ſhort thick Worm, like a Maggot, having black heads, and are engendred through the corruption of heat and moiſture in the Maw or Bowels of a Horſe where they gnaw and afflict him in a grievous manner, and may be diſcerned by his lifting up his feet to ſtrike at his Belly, and the ſmall ſtomach he has to feed. The way to deſtroy them is thus:

Take Rue, Savin, Nightſhade, the Seeds of *Ameos*, each two ounces: bruiſe them well, and with Honey and

and Roach-Allum make them into little balls; and buttering them over, ſuffer him to ſwallow two of them in the Morning faſting, and about an hour after give him of Salad-oyl and *Aqua vitæ*, each a quarter of a pint, very hot; and after that let him ſtand another hour before you give him any Provender: and this Rule obſerve for a week together.

For the Shoulder-ſtrain, a good Remedy.

Having tied up the lame Leg, drive your Horſe till by his ſtriving to go on three Legs the Plat-vein appear; then let down his Leg, and bleed him on that ſide, having in a readineſs a baſon with Salt in it to receive the blood, ſtirring it to keep it from clotting: then having likewiſe an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine, put it into half a pint of Beer or Ale, warm them well; and when he has bled a quart or more, as you ſee occaſion, nip the Orifice with a piece of Lead made in form for that purpoſe, and chafe the place grieved with the Oyl and Beer, and afterward with the Blood and Salt; then putting him into a warm Stable, draw the two fore-legs into an evenneſs with a Liſt or Girt, bending them ſtrait, and ſo permitting him to ſtand; or if you think convenient, to keep his feet the firmer and evener, wedg them between the Shoe and the Hoof with a flat ſtick, continuing to anoint and bathe him as often as occaſion requires, unbinding his Legs, and leading him each Morning till you find the Lameneſs decreaſe. And thus you may do for a Wrench or Diſtortion of the ſhoulder.

Broken-wind; what it is; and to remedy it, if not paſt Cure.

The Breaking of the Wind is occaſioned by exceſſive riding or ſtraining, or by bad uſage after much labour or exceſſive Rheums falling upon the Lungs, and hindring them in the performance of their office, to that degree, that the cloſures of the Wind-pipe ſhrink up, or are reſtrained from their former plyableneſs; And to remedy this, if not too far gone,

Take the Soil or Dung of a Boar, or Barrow-Pig, dried

dried, that it may be reduced to Powder, and of Anniseeds an equal quantity: boil them in Milk or Whey and give him a pint of it hot to drink every third Morning, causing him to Exercise moderately thereupon: or it would be better if you cou'd get the Dung of a Hedge-hog, usually called an Urchin; the Dose to the pint of Milk is two spoonfuls of each of the Ingredients.

A Horse burnt by a Mare, how to Cure.

This grief is to be observed by the Mattering of the Yard, &c. and the dullness of the countenance of the Horse; which perceived. To remedy the Grievance,

Boil a quarter of a pound of Roach-Allom in a pint of White-wine; and being reduced to a thinness, squirt part of it blood-warm up the Horse's Yard with a Syringe and by doing so once a day for a week together, the Cause will cease, and the Effects be no more.

For a dry Cough, cold Pursiveness, broken Wind, or shortness of Breath, an excellent Remedy.

These distempers being occasioned by cold gross humours, rawness of diet, over-much labour, unseasonable gross feeding, and unwholsome Airs which infect the Lungs:

Take an ounce of Rue Seeds, Tarr two ounces, and as much fresh Butter: mix them well together with the Powder of Licorish, Anniseed, Nutmeg, and brown Sugar-candy, and make them into three balls in equal potions; and when your Horse is warm with motion or riding, having put into each ball three or four Cloves of Garlick, oblige your Hore to swallow them when he is fasting; and bringing him home, let him stand without Meat for the space of an hour in a warm Stable.

If the former fail, as rarely it does, Take of Bacon Lard a piece to the breadth of four fingers, and every way as thick as long, if you can get it: But as for the thickness, two fingers may serve: then stop it with Cloves and Garlick, dusting it over with Pow-
der

der of Licoriſh, Anniſeeds, Sugar-candy and Flower of Brimſtone, and cauſe him in two long ſlices to ſwallow it faſting, and ride him thereupon, that he caſt it not up: and do ſo every other Morning for a week together, giving him after it a Glaſs of Malaga.

Now to make a Horſe in this caſe ſwallow, though againſt his will, Draw forth his Tongue as far as is convenient, and put the potion down his Throat beyond the roughneſs; and then ſuddainly letting go his Tongue, he will ſwallow it down without taſting or ſcenting: and in ſo doing you muſt ever draw up his Head to the Rack that it may deſcend the better.

To reſtore decayed and putrefied Lungs.

The Sign of the Lungs being in this diſorder, is to be known by a faint Cough, and the caſting of putrefied matter out of his Mouth like ſmall pieces of red Fleſh, eating his Provender with greedineſs. To redreſs this,

Take of the Juyce of Purſlain; or, for want of it that of Houſleek, half a pint; Steel-duſt two ounces, Oyl of Roſes four ounces; of *Tragcauthium* one ounce; Add to them a quart of Goat's Milk, and give it him hot at three times, keeping him for a while after faſting and in motion: And this you may uſe till you find his Breath become ſweet, and the Cough allayed; the which, if it be not too far gone, will be in a weeks time. And the better to refreſh the Vital parts, Burn under his Noſe *Storax*, *Galbanum* or *Myrrh*.

A dry Conſumption, its Remedy, &c.

This Diſeaſe is occaſioned by ſharp corroding humours deſcending from the Head, and falling upon the Lungs, by which they are many times ulcerated, and by their bad effects, cauſe a Macerating or Waſting of the Body, yet ſendeth forth no Corruption at the Noſe, becauſe the moiſture is conſumed by the heat: To remedy which,

Take a pint of the Juyce of Comfory, half a pint of Oyl of Roſes, the Juyce of four Lemons, and an ounce of the Juyce of Rue: Let them ſimper over a gent'

gentle fire, and add the Powder of Round Bithwort Roots two ounces, and an ounce of that of Ruburb, and give him these in two equal potions Morning and Evening.

The Breast-pain; from whence it proceeds, and how to Cure it.

This disorder of the Body proceedeth from a superfluity of Blood, which presses the Heart, and gross indigested humours that make the like unnatural Invasion upon the Liver; and the signs to know when he is so afflicted, are a stiff staggering and keeping together the fore-legs as it were, and but weakly proceeding in his pace, &c. his Gate distorted and eneven, stifly, for the most part, holding up his Head and Neck, as not being well able to reach the ground; and moreover, you will observe him to groan and strain in his eating and drinking.

To cure this, which frequently ends in death, if not timely regarded, let him Blood in both the Breast-veins; and when he has bled sufficiently, two quarts at least, chafe his Breast and Fore-body with Oyl of Peter, that the Blood may be drawn into the empty Veins, and so ease the Vital parts of their oppression, and give him a pint of warm White-wine, with two ounces of *Diapente*: or if the Pain afterward continue, which is very rare, you may Rowel him.

Heart-sickness, or Antecor; *whence it proceeds, and how to remedy it.*

This Distemper being an enemy to the Heart, seems from thence to take its denomination, and is caused by a superfluity of the loodin Horses that feed high, and are put to little or no labour: which Blood, for want of motion, being corrupt, infects the Heart, and renders it sickish and languishing.

The signs are a small swelling, rising at the bottom of the Breast encreasing upward to the top of the Neck, whither if it arrive before it be prevented, death frequently issues: it is known also by his hanging his head, loathing his food, and groaning through the oppression of pain. These things being observed.

Let

Let your Horſe Blood on either Plate-vein, or in the Neck, if the Swelling be riſen high; and having bled him freely, Take of the beſt Malmſey a quart, add to it two ounces of Sugar, and an ounce of beaten Cinamon: give it him to drink blood-warm, and it will revive and cheriſh the heart by diſpelling the evil vapours from the Seats of Life; and after that wiſp him well over his Cloth, and let him reſt, giving him the next Morning the like doſe, and riding him gently.

Foundering in the Body or Surfeiting, how occaſioned, together with the Remedy.

This Diſeaſe according to the Skilful, is occaſioned by a contraction of Molten-greaſe and evil Humours which oppreſs the frame of the Body, and is taken by the bad management of thoſe that uſe the Horſe indiſcreetly, watering him when hot, or letting him upon a heat ſuddainly cool in a bad air or moiſt place: by which means the diſperſed humours, together with the Molten-greaſe, have opportunity to contract themſelves into one Maſs, to that degree of Conſolidation, that Nature without extraordinary helps, is not capable of diſperſing or diſpelling them.

The ſigns demonſtrating this diſtemper or grievance, are the ſtaring of the hair, hanging the head, an unuſual Cough, ſtagge ing, belching; the clinging up of the Belly and riſing of the Back.

To remedy this diſtemper, Take a handful of Mallows, as much Smallage, Cammomoil and Groundſell an ounce of Alloes, two quarts of new Milk, and half a pound of brown Sugar: boil them together, and ſtrain out the liquid part, giving it the Horſe Clyſter-ways; and when it has cauſed him to empty ſufficiently, Take a quart of Malmſey, or, for want of it, Canary, of Licoriſh, Anniſeeds and Cinamon beaten to Powder, each half an ounce: put them, with two ounces of beaten Sugar-candy, into the Wine, and give it the Horſe warm, keeping him afterward in motion, though in the Stable, for the ſpace of two hours, well

cloathed and littered; after which give him two quarts of Oats, and a quart of Splent-beans well ſifted, and ſprinkled with Beer, &c.

The greedy Worm, or hungry Evil; what it is, and how to be remedied or prevented.

This diſtemper or rather defect in a Horſe, has deceived many; for whereas they take it for a good ſign to ſee a Horſe feed haſtily, and be voracious, yet is it the cauſe of ſickneſs, and decay in the end, if not prevented; for the cauſe a Horſe is ſo hafty and large a feeder, is either by reaſon he has been a long time debarred from Meat, and ſo the Veins being open and empty, crave nutriment; or from too exceſſive a heat in the ſtomach, that conſumes the moiſture and nutriment faſter than it can be reaſonably expected to digeſt: The firſt of theſe, if not prevented, creates diſeaſes, and other diſorders, by the Veins, drawing in the crude digeſtion not perfected, and filling their Cavities with a groſs watry humour, rather than good blood; and the latter by feeding the heat (which otherwiſe would decay) that conſumes the radical moiſture.

The help for this is, firſt feeding the Horſe by degrees, ſuffering a regular digeſtion; and the latter by giving him cooling things to allay the heat, and moderate the Appetite, are the beſt things to reduce him to a due temperature and managed diet, as has been ſaid; but more particularly, give him a quart of Cream, a pint of White-wine boiled with a handful of Wood-ſorrel, and the like quantity of Scabeous or Mugwort, the liquid part only: Let him take it cold, and reſt upon it, and it will cloſe the Veins to that degree, that the digeſtion may be made perfect; as alſo it will allay the heat.

Yellow and Black Jaundice in a Horſe, the Cauſe and Cure, &c.

The Yellow Jaundice generally ariſes from the abundance of cholerick humours contracted, which occaſion the overflowing of the Gall, and are great oppreſſors of the body, and obſtructors of health; and the ſigns are the Yellowneſs of the Mouth-Skin, in-

ſides

ſides of the Lips and Eyes. There is another kind of this diſeaſe that proceeds from Melancholly; and theſe are called the Black Jaundice, and have their original from Obſtructions in the Liver-vein, which paſſeth to the Spleen, and conſequently hinders the Spleen from doing its proper office, by receiving only corrupted Blood from the Liver; and ſo is obliged, by reaſon of its being ſurcharged, to caſt it back into the Veins: And this latter in caſe of death, as indeed being moſt dangerous, maſtereth the former; but a timely regard may remove them; as thus:

Take, after you have blooded your Horſe in the third Barr of the Mouth, an ounce of Turmerick, and half an ounce of Saffron, four or five Cloves, and ſix ſpoonfuls of ſtrong Vinegar, Long-Pepper and Licoras, beaten fine, of each an ounce, with the like quantity of Burdock-roots: boil them in two quarts of Ale till a third, or at leaſt a fourth part be conſumed, and give it him to drink very hot; and in ſo doing you will find the bad humours diſperſe, and by degrees loſing their force by the operation of Nature, and the conquering quality of the Medicament; but if it be too long delay'd, it many times runs beyond the help of Art.

Coſtiveneſs; from whence it proceeds, and its Remedy.

This diſorder is a hardning of the Excrements in the body, ſo that without great pain the Horſe can not evacuate or void his Dung; and this is often occaſioned by exceſs of Provender, inſomuch that Nature forces it into the Bowels before it be well digeſted in the ſtomach: or again, it happens by feeding altogether upon dry Meats; the which, though wholeſome and nouriſhing, contract notwithſtanding the Excrements by the extraordinary heat they occaſion; and it may likewiſe happen by exceſſive faſting. To remedy which, you may give him a Clyſter made in this manner:

Take a handfull of Marſhmallows, decoct them in Spring-water, not exceeding a quart: add to theſe half a pint of Salad-oyl, and ſix ounces of freſh But-

ter; of *Benedicta Laxativa* an ounce, and force them warm up his Fundament, holding or tying close his Tail, by bringing it with a cord between his Legs, obliging him to keep it in for the space of an hour: And the better to make it work, give him a warm Mash, and as soon as he has discharged it, give him in a Drenching-horn a potion made after this manner:

Take two ounces of Castle-soap, dissolve it in a pint of warm White-wine, and with it a quarter of a pint of Linsed-oyl; sweetning them all with Sugar-candy, and give it him as hot as he can drink it.

The Cramp, or Convulsion in the Nerves or Sinews, how occasioned; together with the Remedy, &c.

These generally proceed from some bruise, wound or other hurt on the Nerves or Sinews, or excessive straining, especially when the Horse after a great heat by riding or servile labour suddainly cool.

This grievance is known by the trembling of the Joynts, Nerves or Veins, or by their contracting to such a stubbornes or stiffnes, that, for a time, neither the Horse, nor those that attempt to help him are capable of bending them.

To cure this, Take Cammomoil, Primrose-leaves, the Roots of Crowfeet and Cowslips, with the Branches of Fennel, Rosemary and Pimpernel: boil them in Running-water, and having pressed out the liquid part bathe the place grieved with it exceeding hot, binding on the Herbs Poltis-ways with course Linnen, or bands made of S raw or Hay, and keeping him in a warm Stable, with good Provender, his Limbs will be restored, and rendred as before; and the better to hearten him, let him receive for a Morning or two the Yolk of an Egg in a Glass of Canary.

The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause and the means to cure it.

This Grievance is caused by suddainly cooling upon excessive heats, standing in damp or wet places, or eating such things as turn to raw humours; which falling upon the Liver and Lungs, frequently inflame or putrefie

trefie them, ſo that they occaſion the Horſe by defect of their office to fall down ſuddainly and dye. Therefore when you by any trembling or dullneſs ſuſpect this grievance, let your Horſe blood; and having chafed him well,

Take Olive-oyl and Verjuyce, of each two ounces, the Juyce of Sellendine, and powder of Elecampane Roots, of each an ounce: warm them a little, and tying his head up to the Rack, pour them into his Noſtrils, ſtopping them cloſe after it, that he may be forced to ſneeze and ſtrain to caſt it out; after which having an ounce of the Powder of Ruburb heated in a pint of Canary, give it him in a Drenching-horn as hot as he can well endure it; and ſo uſe him each Morning for a week together, and the bad humours will be worked off.

Frenzy or Madneſs, its Original; with the means to remedy it according to the Experienced way.

This diſeaſe is very dangerous, and often terminates in death, and is occaſioned by hot and fiery humours unſeaſonably mixing with the blood which by its aſcending Inflammation afflicts the Brain, that principal ſeat of life: And this is known by the ſtaring of the Horſe, the diſtorting of his Eyes, hanging of his Ears, Staggering and Giddineſs, his often crying and forſaking his Mean; and if it be wrought to a height, his often beating himſelf againſt the Poſt, Manager, or other places he can conveniently come at; biting, ſtamping, and flying about; with many the like diſorders.

To remedy this, ſpeedily let him Blood in the Temple-veins; and if he bleed not freely there, ſtrike him in the Neck-veins; when having bled ſufficiently, Take the Roots of Gourds or wild Cucumbers, Black Hellebore, Rue and Mint, with *Virgo Paſtoris*, each a handfull, boil them in Beer or fair Running-water, and give him the liquid part very warm; and doing ſo three or four times it will purifie and purge the Blood. but if

you ſuppoſe it too weak for the Horſe's conſtitution, you may diſſolve in it an ounce of well waſhed Ailoes: And obſerve in this caſe, above all things, to keep him warm.

The falling-Evil, its Cauſe and Remedy.

This diſtemper is cauſed by a vapour that oppreſſes or annoys the Vital parts, rendering the frame of the body for a time ſenſleſs, and altogether unable to diſtinguiſh what befalls it, and has its original from an evil habit of body; and its approach is frequently known by the coldneſs of the Noſe and Griſtles thereabout.

The ſpeedy, at leaſt the beſt Remedy, is to let him Blood on both the Neck-veins in the Morning when he is faſting, and then prepare a doſe of Powder of dryed Berries of Miſletoe, and the Powder of Hartshorn, each an ounce; of the Oyl of Nutmeg and Pepper, each a dram: compound them in half a pint of Canary, and give it the Horſe, when you perceive the grief to be coming on him, as warm as may be.

The ſleeping-Evil; what it is, and the way to remedy it.

This is a diſtemper, frequently occaſioned by the over moiſtneſs of the Brain, or rather a watry coldneſs contracted within the cells, which chills and numbs the Brain, whereby the Horſe becomes dozed, heavy and ſtupid, ever deſirous to ſleep, yet ſtill troubled with reſtleſs dreams and diſorders, and ows its original to moiſt feeding in Marſhey-grounds, whereby abundance of phlegmatick and watry Humours have been contracted: And in this caſe likewiſe letting Blood in both the Neck-veins is much available: But further to perfect the cure,

Take Cammomoil and Motherwort, of each a like quantity: boil them in a Gallon of Running-water, with a pound of Treacle, and a handful of Bay-leaves, and give the Horſe a pint each Morning faſting as hot as he can endure it, keeping him warm, and faſting for the ſpace of an hour after; and then of Malt or ſcalded Bran make him a warm Maſh.

The

The Horſe-Peſtilence, and its Cure.

The Peſtilence in Horſes is either contracted by bad feeding, which occaſions a corruption or inflammation of the Blood whereby the Heart is afflicted, or it happens by being in foggy and infectious Airs, or catched by Contagion: And in any of theſe caſes,

Take Lavender a handfull, the like quantity of Rue and Wormwood; as alſo of Walnut-tree Leaves, and an ounce of Alloes: boil them in a quart of Water, or three pints of Milk, till half be conſumed; then add half a pound of freſh Butter, or rather, if you can get it, half a pint of the ſweeteſt Olive-oyl, and ſtraining out the liquid part, give it the Horſe faſting in the Morning blood-warm, repeating a freſh Doſe every other Morning for the ſpace of a week.

For Cheſt-foundring, the Remedy.

To know whether your Horſe be Cheſt-foundered, or not, obſerve him ſtanding; and if then he do as it were ſtand, drawn up, or crimpling with his body, or ſtragling, and covet much to lye down, running ſometimes backward in his going, then is it apparent he is afflicted with this grievance: to cure which,

Take Oyl of Peter half an ounce, mix it with an ounce of the Oyl of Cammomoil; and ſo proportionably a greater quantity, as you ſee occaſion, and bathe the Breaſt with a hot Woollen cloth; and when you have in that manner chafed it as well as you can, run a hot Iron over it to make it ſink into the Skin: Do this twice or thrice, and give the Horſe a quarter of a pint of Salad-oyl, and the like quantity of *Aqua vitæ*, warmed and well mixed together over a gentle fire,

For an Obſtruction in the Bladder or Windineſs in the Bowels, uſe this Approved Medicine.

Of Cake or Caſtle-ſoap take twelve ounces, ſcrape it ſo that it may be rendered very ſmall, adding two ounces of *Dialthæa*: Incorporate them well, and make them up into balls as big as Pigeons Eggs; and when you find your Horſe afflicted, as aforeſaid, diſſolve one of them

n a pint of Ale or Beer, and give it him ſcalding-hot or ſo hot as he can take it without danger. and it will force a paſſage for the Urine without much difficulty: This is alſo good for the Stone, or Gravel in the Kidneys.

The Pole-Evil, how to know and Cure.

The Pole-Evil is known by its growing bigger than ordinary on the top of the head; where, if you find it large, take a hot Iron, and ſear it in a circle after the form of the Figure, till the Skin become as it were of a yellowiſh colour; then with a ſharp Iron make holes in it, one large one in the middle, ſmall ones circling it within the firſt Circle; the form of the Iron, which muſt not penetrate above half an Inch, you have in the Margin. The holes made as directed,

Take a piece of yellow Arſnick, to the bigneſs of a Pea, and divide that, or a ſomewhat larger quantity, that a part may be applied to every hole made, as aforeſaid and cover it over with black Soap; then with Hog's Lard and Verdegreaſe anoint the reſt of the place ſeared, and cover it all over with a cloth dipped in the Oyl of Turpentine; and ſo by the corroſive nature of the Arſnick the contracted ſwelling will be ſo looſned that with a little cutting or drawing off the bottom, the core or cauſe of the grievance may be drawn out or taken away; and this frequently, eſpecially according to the conſtitution of the Horſe, may be attempted in a week or ten days after the application; and having waſhed the wound with Plantane-water, wherein a ſmall quantity of Allom has been diſſolved, anoint it with Oyl of Roſes, or Ointment of Tobacco, and cover it up cloſe from the Air, anointing it once a day till the fleſh fill up the hollowneſs; and if proud fleſh appear, notwithſtanding ſcald it with Salt and Butter.

The Festula, how to discover and cure.

A Festula is the contraction and settlement of bad humours, or infection into one place, occasioning an Ulcerous Tumour, and is best suppressed by Cauterizing in circling it, round to prevent its further spreading, and likewise to deny the humours that feed its access; and when you have with a hot Iron circled it as the former, prick it full of holes with a three square sharp Instrument: the Figure of which, and of the Circle, take notice of in the Margin; and so use it in all respects, as that of the Pole-Evil, if you find it very corrupt; but if it appear shallow, mitigate the Corrosives to half the quantity and search it in a shorter time, letting out the Corruption, if it will come forth by applying Lenitives, *&c.* And when you find it begin to heal anoint it first with Oyl of Cammomoil, and after that take the effects of the fire quite away with Oyntment of Marshmallows, beaten, with the white of an Egg, or *Spermaceti.*

Hard Kernels under the Throat how to remove.

Take half a pint of Brandy or *Aqua vitæ*, put into it a quarter of a pound of common Soap; boil them till they become thick as a Plaster, and apply it Plaster-wise to the place grieved; and if no store of corruption, or a contraction of evil humours attend those Kernels then will it sink them, so that they will not be offensive; and if there be humours, it will break and disperse them.

For the Navel-gall, the Remedy.

Take an indifferent fine Rag, dip it in Brandy and Sallad-oyl, well incorporated over a gentle fire: bathe and supple well the place grieved; and to make it penetrate the better, run it over afterward with an exceeding hot cloth; and in often so doing the Cure will be wrought.

For a Blow, Bruiſe, or the like misfortune that cauſes a Swelling or Tumour; the Remedy.

If the ſwelling be about the Head, let the Horſe blood in the Neck-vein, on that ſide the misfortune befell: which done to prevent the Farcy, and the like,

Take of Anniſeeds, Rue, Turmerick and red Sage; each about an ounce: ſhread them out into a quart of Beer or Ale, and ſuffering them to infuſe therein for the ſpace of a night, preſs out the next morning the liquid part very hard, and give it him cold to drink, ſuffering him to faſt after them for the ſpace of four hours; then having in readineſs a charge made of *Aqua vitæ* and Soap, ſpread it upon a Leather, ſo much as will cover the ſwelling, and your expectation will be anſwered.

The Scratches, their Remedy.

The Scratches are a troubleſome Sorrance found upon the hinder heels of a Horſe, on the Paſterns and ſomewhat above, and are cauſed by the breaking out of evil humours ſetling there: To cure which,

Take of Hen's-dung and black Soap, each two ounces: incorporate them with Hog's-greaſe, or Neats-foot-oyl, over a gentle Fire, till they become an Oyntment: Then having dried and rubbed the Horſe's heels, anoint them with it, and bind on the Oyntment, or Swathe the Legs with a warm cloth, not ſuffering the Horſe to come into the water: And if this prove not a ſufficient Remedy at ſeveral times uſing, try this more powerfull:

Take Beef-broth and bathe his Legs well therewith over night; and rubbing them clean the next morning, Take two ounces of Deer's Suet, the like quantity of Speck Oyl and an ounce of Verdegreaſe: beat them well together inhalf a pint of Train-oyl; put them into an Earthen-pot on a gentle fire and ſtir them well together and anoint the place grieved, chafing it in with a hot cloth, keeping him out of the water and dirty ways.

For Foot-foundring, a Remedy.

Having found by the lameneſs or crimpling of your Horſe that he is foundred, which moſtly happens by unſeaſonably travelling in dirty ways, and not being well regarded upon his ſetting up; bleed him a little in the Thigh, or if you can conveniently, in the Fetlock-vein, and ſet on his Shoe hollow, the Wool or Cotton may be thruſt between as occaſion requires it; then

Take Venice-Turpentine, and ſpread it upon a Lock or Wad thereof, putting it with a flat ſtick between the Shoe and the Hoof and the latter being well pared, keeping it in with a peice of Leather, and renewing it every three days; and as you ſee his Hoof grow again, pare him even to the quick, applying the Plaiſter, and ſuffering him to run in ſoft, though not in dirty or miery ground.

For the Canker in the Head, a Remedy.

When you find by the rawneſs and yellow matter that this grievance has ſeized your Horſe; to remedy it before it grow deſperate,

Take a pint of Olive-Oyl, of Burgundia-Pitch three ounces, and an ounce of waſhed Turpentine: put them all into a Pipkin, and mix them together over a gentle fire; and when they are mixed, add an ounce of Verdigreaſe, and boil them up to the thickneſs of a Salve, ever keeping the matter ſtirring; and making a Plaiſter apply it to the Canker, according to the advantage of the place where it is ſituate, having firſt rubbed off the Scurf or Scales; and if ſo it happen to be in the Noſtrils having waſhed it with a Spunge at the end of a ſtick, dipped in Salt and Vinegar: to cleanſe it, wet the Salve, and dipping a feather therein, anoint the place grieved with it when warm, and capable of ſticking, by the like application.

For the Mangey, or dry Scurvey, a Cure.

Having cleanſed the place by ſcraping off the Scurf or Scabs, that it may lye open to the operation of the Medicament or Application,

Take

Take a quarter of a pint of ſtrong Beer, with two ounces of the Oyl of Turpentine, and well mixing them by ſhaking in a Viol-glaſs; anoint the place grieved with a feather, tying up your Horſe to prevent his unrulineſs during your ſo doing, and till the ſharpneſs of its operation be over, with a ſtrong cord to the Rack; then blow upon it Powder of Bole-armorick, and bind the Sorrance gently with a cloth: this you may repeat once a week as often as you ſee occaſion; and when it heals, which will be ſignified by the returning of the hair, then you may ſupple it with Oyntment of Marſhmallows, and waſh it with water wherein Chamvil has been concocted or boiled.

The Vives, *and their Remedy*

The *Vives* are a troubleſome Diſtemper, or Grievance that frequently happen under the Ears of a Horſe, and many times endanger his life: For which, in the firſt place, let your Horſe blood in both the Neck-veins; Then placing your Eernacles upon his Noſe to make him leſs ſenſible of pain; ſhape an Iron as you ſee the form in the Margin; ſuffering the edge to be about the thickneſs of a half Crown: Heat it red hot and ſcarifie the place upon the middle of the ſwelling, from the root of the Ears, downwards to the loweſt part thereof, in the form annexed, till you perceive the Skin of a yellowiſh colour, then deſiſt: And having paſſed over the place with a cloth, anoint it with Oyl of Roſes: or for want of that, freſh Butter or Hog's Lard, keeping the place ſupple by often repeating it; as alſo the Horſe in a warm Stable, with good diet.

For ſwanking in the Back, or a ſtrain in the Kidneys, cauſed by indiſcreet Riding or over-burthening.

Your Horſe being under theſe circumſtances, mix well together two ounces of Nerve-oyl, and the like quantity of the Oyl of Turpentine, over a gentle fire; and having a Sheeps-skin newly ſtripped off, rub it with a bruſh or cloth all over the fleſhy ſide, and clapping the Skin upon the Horſes back, eſpecially where the grief is, bind it on with broad Surſingles very ſtrait, bracing it in with a Crupper behind, and Straps before; and give the Horſe the Juyce of Pelletory, ſweetned with Sugar-candy, half a pint warm, in a pint of Ale.

For pain or foulneſs in the Reins or Kidneys, an excellent Scowring.

Take Treacle-Jean two ounces, and Rubarb in Powder half an ounce, with an ounce of the Juyce of Hyſop to qualifie them: put theſe into a pint of Beer or Ale when very hot and give it the Horſe faſting.

A preſent relief for an Attaint or over-reach on the Heel, or the like.

This miſ-hap cometh to paſs when the Horſe with the Toe of his hinder Shoe ſtrikes the Heel juſt at the ſetting on of the Hoof, commonly called the Over-reach; and if not timely regarded, may prove dangerous; for being not only a breaking of the fleſh, but a ſtrong bruiſe, it ſometimes by its Rankling periſhes the Sinews, or otherwiſe renders the Horſe lame or diſabled: And in this caſe clip away the hair, and the batter'd skin or fleſh, which you will find hang looſe and uſeleſs: And having ſo done, waſh the dirt out of it with Water and Salt; after which anoint it with Neatsfoot Oyl or Mutton Suet, and then dip a wad of Flax in the Whites of Eggs, and bind it hard with a liſt or ſoft ſtring to the place, and renew it till you find the Sorrance healed which will be in a week or thereabouts.

A Cure for the Sorrance, called the Ring-bone.

This Ring-bone is an Excreſſence, generally growing upon the Inſtep, juſt above the Hoof on the forepart of the hinder-leg. and is many times as big as a Pigeon's Egg: To remove this,

Tye

Tye up the contrary Leg of yo Horſe, and ſtrike with a ſharp Bodkin, a cording to the form in the Margin, five ſix holes in the Ring-bone, at the edge of ſuffering the holes to be of an equal diſtanc and put into them Arſnick or White Mer ry, beaten into fine Powder, and with t Skin of Mutton-ſuet bind the Sorrance up the ſpace of a day and a night, and it will e away by its corroſive quality the foundat on; ſo that the Ring-bone being anoint with Supplements, will fall off or crumble away.

For the Water-Farcion, a Remedy.

This diſtemper is occaſioned by the Horſe's unwholſom feeding in low wet ground, where the moiſture is grea inſomuch that with the Graſs the Horſe takes in extrao dinary quantities, which frequently occaſions ſoft ſwe lings under the belly and chaps.

To cure this, Work a piece of Iron in the faſhion of Fleam, and having heated it red hot, ſtrike it through the Skin of the Swellings, and the contracted humour will flow thence, being an oyly-water of Colour yellow iſh, and ſometimes greyiſh; and then there needs n more than to waſh it with Chamber-lye as hot as can b well endured, having mixed with it the infuſion of To bacco-ſtalks, and Powder of Bole-armorick.

For the Ives a Remedy.

This diſtemper is found to grow like a Roll between the Neck and the hinder-part of the Jaw-bone, and is of dangerous conſequence if it aſcend to the roots of the Ears.

The ſpeedieſt Remedy for theſe is to let the Horſe bleed well in the Neck-vein; then take Pepper, Hog's-Lard and Vinegar, each half an ounce, with a ſpoon-full of the Juyce of Savin: make them up as thick as may be; put on half of them into one Ear, and the reſt into the other; ſtop them in with Lint, ſtitching up the Ears ſo faſt, that he cannot ſhake them out for the

ſpace

pace of twenty four hours, and they will diſtill into the Head an operative quinteſſence, that will diſſolve the ſwelling.

To take off the Film or Skin from a Horſe's Eye.

To remove this Obſtruction to the ſight, Take a piece of lean Hung Beef, or other Salt Beef: dry it in an Oven to that degree, that it may be reduced to Powder and do the like by a ſtick of Licoras: ſo take of them an equal quantity, and a third part of Burnt Roach-Allom: mix them well, and each morning blow with a Quill about a penny weight into the Horſe's Eye, drawing the lids together, if he will ſuffer it, the better to keep in the Powder; and in ſo doing, every other day for five or ſix days together, the Film will vaniſh. This likewiſe will remove the Pin and Web.

A Mallender the Remedy to Cure it.

Having rubbed it well with a cloth, mix Soap, with red Mercury precipitate; and having anointed the place grieved therewith, take away the hair; and having four days ſucceſſively anointed it in the ſame manner, afterwards uſe mollifying Oyls or Oyntments to take away the heat of the former Unguent; and then waſh the place with Urine or Vinegar till it be reſtored.

For the Palſey or Appolexy, a Remedy.

Theſe diſtempers are occaſioned by the Nerves and Sinews, as alſo the Brain being afflicted with bad humours or aſcending vapours; and the ſigns are the ſtiffneſs of the Neck and hinder parts, the hardneſs of his Flanks, and the dullneſs of his Eyes. To remedy which.

Take the Oyl of Peter, and chaſe it into thoſe parts you perceive to be afflicted; force it for its more ſpeedy penetration, with an Iron indifferently hot, and after that give him half a pint of Penyroyal-water, ſweetned with Sugar, and cover him up warm: you may if you can oblige him to lye down, cover him with the reeking Litter, and gently twiſt a thumb-band of the ſame all over his Neck.

A Far-

A Farcion in the Head and Neck to Cure.

For this diſtemper proceeding from corrupt humour the Neck-veins muſt be breathed: Then mix the Juyc of Houſleek and Hemlock a like quantity, not exceedi two ſpoonfuls; adding a ſpoonful of Olive oyl, and d viding them into equal potions: put a half into each Ea ſtopping it in with Cotton or Lint, and tye up the Ea for twenty four Hours, giving him at the end of thre hours a warm Maſh, with a few Coriander-ſeeds in it.

A Lineament to cleanſe a Wound, new or old.

Take Elder-roots dry, and beat them to Powder and boil the Powder with Honey, and a little Allom water, and make a Peſſary or Lineament; and dippin it therein when blood-warm, wrap it round your Probl and gently cleanſe the Wound; waſhing it likewiſe wit water, and it will cauſe it to fill with fleſh.

For Kibed-heels, commonly called the Mules, *a Remedy*

Theſe Sorrances are no other than dry Scabs breeding upon the Horſe's heels, and ſo inward to the Fetloc in long chinks, chops and creaſes, *&c.* and the occaſion going in wet and dirty ground, and then heated withou any regard or good looking too, which makes even a good Horſe, when ſo afflicted, ſtiff and unfit for ſervice To remedy which,

Take Calcined Tartar, and diſſolve it in Water and when it is congealed in the nature of Salt, mi it with Soap, and the Oyl of Tobacco, and with it an oint the Sorrance, waſhing it before and after wit ſtrong Beef-broth, and in four or five days, with th continuance, they will be well, eſpecially if the Chops o Rifts are not exceeding deep.

The Quitter-bone; what it is, with its Remedy.

The Quitter-bone is either occaſioned through th fretting or corroding of Gravel under the Shoe; o by an unfortunate or careleſs prick with a Nail le unregarded againſt the Sinews, which cauſes th humour thereby contracted, to move upward, an break out in a round hard ſwelling on the corronet o th

the Hoof and in four or five days will it break, and send forth matter from a deep hole like an Ulcer, and is in it self very dangerous and troublesome; the best way to sink or destroy it, is to Cauterize it with a hot Iron made in the fashion of a half-moon as thus: let it be done almost round, and quite cross the middle overthwart; then prick it full of holes an equal distance from each other, and put in Arsnick or Mercury covering it over with Soap or Butter, binding it down with a Lineament for the space of two days; and then, if you find it black, the effects are wrought by the Poyson, insomuch that you may venter to take away the core, though it hang a little by the grisle, and lint the hole with a lint dipped in Verdegrease and Honey well boiled together, anointing the parts about it with Hogs Lard as a supplement till it be well.

An excellent Cure for the Bloud-spavin, &c.

Take up, and knit the Vein above the grievance; and having divided it, take of Linseed a pint, bruise it well, and fry it in a Pan with new Cow-dung; and add more, four ounces of Hog's Lard, and two of the juyce of Hemlock; and so in the form of a Cataplasm apply it, renewing it every day, and it will cause the Sore to come to a head, and then by breaking it brings away the corruption.

For a Neather, Attaint, or Over-reach in the Pastern Joint.

This Sorrance is known by a little gellied Bladder on the hollow of the Pastern-joint, not much differing from a Wind-gall; which though many times not to be seen at a distance, yet may it be found and known by feeling. To cure or remove this,

Take a small cord or list, and rowl it somewhat strait from the Knee to the Neather-joint, and then with a Fleam let out the corrupt matter: which being pressed out, Take the Whites of four Eggs, a handfull of Bay-salt, and

and two ounces of the juice of Hemlock: mix them w
together and dipping a Rag into them, or rather a wa
of Flax, having firſt unbound the ſtring, lay it on t
place were the ſwelling was and bind it ſoftly on; and
continue to renew it for the ſpace of four or five days.

For a putrefied Fruſh, the Cure.

Having well waſhed and cleanſed the Foot w
Man's Urine, take of beaten Allom a pound, and
it into a quart of the ſame Urine; and gathering
good quantity of green Nettles dry them ſo that th
may without difficulty be beaten into a Powder: do t
like by Pepper; and when you have after Travel, or a
Exerciſe, waſhed the place grieved with the Urine,
which the Allom is diſſolved, blow the Powder upon
and ſo bind it up: And by this doing frequently, you w
find the effects anſwerable to your expectation.

To diſſolve the humours, and thereby anticipate Diſeaſes.

Take Sage, Roſemary, Wormwood, the Bark of t
root of an Elm, or the leaves of the Pine and Wor
wood, of each a handfull: ſtamp or ſhread them, a
then boil them in the Oyl of Linſeed till they, bei
preſſed, become the thickneſs of an Oyntment, and with
as hot as may be: chafe and rub the place where you pe
ceive the humours to ſettle or begin to draw togethe
and by often ſo doing they will diſperſe. Figs and S
boiled to Gelly, with the Juyce of Nettles and Elde
have in many caſes the ſame effects.

To ſoften any hard ſwelling, or contracted hardneſs.

Take of Neatsfoot-oyl a quart, of the Juyce of Cole-wo
halfa pint, of the Marrow of Hog's feet two ounces, and
ounce of the Oyl of Cyprus, with half a handfull of t
roots of Mallows bruiſed: boil or heat them over a gen
fire till they incorporate, and become an oyntment then t
roots being taken away, put it up into a Gally-pot, a
as often as you ſee occaſion uſe it hot to the grieved plac

*For the Splint, Wind-gall, or Bladders of Gelly, in or abou
any of the Joints ſubject thereto.*

Take Bees-wax a pound, Per-roſin half a pound, G
bu

num two ounces, *Sal-Armoniack* an ounce, *Coſtus* three unces, *Myrrh Secundary* a pound: bruiſe and melt them gether till they are well incorporated; and ſo being ade into a Salve or thick Oyntment, uſe it Plaſter-wiſe, applying it to the grievance, and you will ſoon find effectual.

To cleanſe any putrefied, or other Sore, the ſafeſt way.

Take Salad-oyl and tryed Hog's Lard of each a pound; urpentine and White-wax, of each four ounces, and ſix nces of Allom-powder, and a quarter of a pint of the yce of Rue: make them into an Oyntment over a gen- fire, and dreſs the Wound therewith, as you ſee occa- on, and it will not only cleanſe it, but fill it with ſound eſh.

A Horſe Planet-ſtruck, how to Cure.

This diſtemper takes a Horſe s Limbs away on a ſuddain, that they remain for a good time in the ſame poſture ey did at the time of the ſeizure, he not being able move them: And this, though it is by the Engliſh alled *Planet-ſtruck*, and by the French *Surprius*, yet it no other than the effects of heat and cold; and whe- her of theſe it is, may be thus perceived.

If it be cold, then is it diſcerned ſometime before by is ſnuffling and rattling in the head, which denotes that old phlegmatick humours do aſſault the brain: And if om heat, then it may be perceived by the dryneſs of ongue, the ſcorching of the Breath, clear breathing nd the like, then is the Malady in the blood, compoſed f crudities and groſs humours: For the firſt, anoint his emples with the Oyl of *Petrolum*, and give him an ounce f *Leſerpitum* in a pint of Canary, and half a pint of O- ve-oyl, as warm as may be: And for the latter, ha- ing blooded your Horſe, give him Water and Honey, ith an ounce of *Leſerpitum*, and two ounces of Melion- eed bruiſed to Powder, and let his diet be moderate, ſpecially if his body abound with groſs humours, that by ſpare diet they may waſte and conſume; though ſometimes indeed

indeed by extream fafting this diſtemper happens, t then good feeding, though by degrees, is the beſt reme

For the Poze, or exceſſive Cold, a Remedy.

Take Conſerve of Ellecampane, or elſe the he bruiſe or diſſolve it into a pint of Mallaga: then a an ounce of beaten Ginger and Powder of Roſeman and having well warmed them over a fire, give them t Horſe to drink: and ſo continue to do every other M ning for a week.

To remedy or cure Hideboundneſs in a Horſe.

This diſorder of body you ſhall know by finding t Skin of your Horſe cleave to his Ribs and Back-bo ſo that you cannot without much difficulty take it u And this proceeds from a pining or waſting, by reaſon ſome inward diſtemper of body, or by having been b kept, bad rid or ſuffered upon a heat to ſtand much rainy weather, and be afterward unſeaſonably drye To remedy which defect, and render his Skin looſe a plyable, ſo that he may thrive and recover his ſtreng

Take of Cummin and Anniſeeds each two ounce the Powder of Licoras an ounce, Flower of Brimſto half an ounce, and oyl of Roſes a quarter of a pin mix theſe together, and heating them well in a qua of Ale, give them the Horſe to drink Morning and Eve ing for the ſpace of a week, and the Remedy will pro its ſufficiency.

For a wet inward Cough, a Remedy.

This diſorder proceeds from the Horſe's being to much in damp foggy Airs, whereby groſs humours are i gendred; which converting to Rheums, fall in ſuch abu dance upon the Lungs, that they as it were ſtifle and o verwhelm them in ſuch a manner, as renders them almo uncapable of performing their Office; ſo that the ſou by that means ſeems to be inward: Now to remedy thi and prevent the danger,

Boil a peck of Barley to a Maſh or Pulp; then add t it Licoras-powder two ounces, Anniſeed and Carrowa ſeeds, of each an ounce; ſliced Dates, or blew Figs half pou

nd, Sugar-candy a pound, Turmerick three ounces, two Roots of Garlick, with a quart of Olive-oil; and en they are boiled to a Mash, press out the Liquid t between two Cheese-fatts, and give him a pint of it for six Mornings together; and soon after exercise n smartly, the weather being dry, and the ground good.

For a dangerous Cough, commonly called the Dry Cough.

This Distemper proceeds from bad feeding or unsea-able labour, which causes the cholerick humour to a-und, and fall upon the Lungs in a hot, tough, yellow gm, which clungs them up as it were, so that the Horse not breathe without pain; and though he seldom ughs, yet when he does it, it is performed with a hol-w sound, and much violence: Now to remedy this,

Take a handfull of Cammomoil, and the like quantity the herb Melliot, two ounces of Licoras-powder, and ee ounces of the Conserve of Red Roses, a quarter of ound of Honey, and two ounces of Allom: boil them Water wherein four ounces of Camphire has been dis-ved, and give him the liquid part to drink it as hot as may well endure it; keeping him for two hours after ting, and beware he catch not cold.

For the Yard of a Horse falling, a Remedy.

This happens to a Horse when he is grown feeble, either over-labouring or a bad feeding, which cause a bad re-lution in the Muscles and Tendons, so that they refuse eir office of support: And in this case,

Take a gallon of Water, boil in it two handfulls of y-salt, half a pound of Carrot-seed, a good handfull of ugwort, and the like quantity of Bay-leaves: then strain t the liquid part, and add a quart of Old Mallago, and ve him this to drink hot, rubbing his Yard with Vine-ar, wherein Nettle-seed and Burdock-seeds have been ncocted.

To prevent the Mattering of the Yard.

This happens to Horses of a hot constitution, especially ter covering: And first appears by the swelling of the nd of the Yard, and his being thereby rendred uncapable

of

of drawing it into his Sheath, when ſoon after you w
perceive much filthy Matter iſſue from thence; at wh
time diſſolve half a pound of Allom in a pint of Whit
wine, and with a Syringe inject it warm into the Yar
whereby the Yard, will not only be ſcowred and coole
but the Humours be driven back and diſperſed.

*Of the Diſeaſes incident moſtly to Mares, and known by t
name of the Peſtilent-conſumption.*

This Diſtemper happens to a Mare when ſhe is near h
Foaling-time, by reaſon of a Flegmatick Humour th
contracts about the Matrix, occaſioned by groſs feedin
and is known by her dulneſs, pining, and deſire to be Lai
and the like: To redreſs which,

Take a pint of *Aqua vitæ*, half an ounce of Tobacc
and a ſprig or two of Spurg-Lawrel; boil them togethe
and then ſtraining out the Liquid part, give it her faſtin
and it will oblige her to caſt out the maſs of Flegm, o
at leaſt the Cauſe that diſturbs her: But by reaſon ſh
will be ſomewhat ſickiſh when ſhe has caſt, Give her ha
a pint of Salad-oil, and the like quantity of Canary, an
keep her in a warm Stable with Maſhes, and good dr
Meat a day or two.

How a Mare that is ſubject to caſt her Foal ought to be uſed.

In this caſe there is more than one Cauſe to be take
notice of, which ſubjects a Mare to caſt her Foal untime
ly, ſometimes dead, and ſometimes alive; as hard Winte
ring, unwholeſome Lodging, over-riding, ſudden ſtrains
or unhappy Blows on the back, leaping Hedges, or the like
together with too much fatneſs, or ſubjection to groſs hu
mours, many times to the endangering of their Lives:
Therefore when you perceive her near her time, bring her
into a warm Stable, and

Take an ounce of *Diapente*, an ounce of *Sarſaparill*
three grains of Musk, and a penny-worth of Fennel
ſeeds: infuſe them in a pint of Muſcadel, and give
them a heating over a gentle fire, and ſuffer the Mare
to drink the liquid part faſting: then dip your hand
in the Oyl of Myrrh, and thruſt it into her Shape, and
give

ve her wholeſome Diet and good Litter: or this may be ne with ſucceſs at the time of her Foaling, eſpecially you perceive difficulty therein, and it will be much ailable in rendring her an eaſie delivery.

How to oblige a Mare to caſt her Foal.

Now, on the contrary, if you imagine the Foal ur Mare goes with is not worth your rearing, or that ſhe s taken Horſe contrary to your deſire; Then boil a ood quantity of Savin in two quarts of new Milk, ad- ng an ounce of Ruburb and a ſmall quantity of Wood- hes and when they are ſufficiently boiled, ſtrain out the iquid part, and give it the Mare to drink very hot, nd then give her a conſiderable heat; and in ſo doing wo or three Mornings, the buſineſs will be effected. ut conſider withall, that you look well to your Mare, aſt you loſe both, for ſhe muſt for a week afterward be ept in the Stable, and that very warm, and with Maſhes f ſweet Malt-Bran and Barley every other Morning.

Of the ſeveral Feavers in a Horſe, and how to Cure them, &c.

There are divers Feavers that frequently poſſeſs the ody of a Horſe, and that at different times; as the *Quotidian*, *Tertian* and *Quartan*; and theſe are occaſioned y groſs humours contracted in the blood, that inflame nd diſorder the frame, and happen according to the cir- ulation of the Blood, or domination of Humours.

As for the firſt of theſe, it is ever the moſt violent, but ever laſteth long, and moſt frequently it cometh in the pring when the Blood begins to encreaſe, eſpecially to olts and young Horſes.

The ſigns that fore-run this, are the watering of the yes, and a redneſs as if they were blood-ſhotten, ſhort antings, hot breath, a loathing or leaving of Proven- er, ſtiffneſs in the Joynts, and unwillingneſs to labour; And if it ſo happen that it befall him at eight of the lock the one day, you may expect it at four the next day; nd the reaſon that is given, is the ebbing and flowing of he blood, and its circulation. To rid him of this trou- bleſome companion, give him, as ſoon as you perceive it

to

to begin a warm Mash, and keep him in motion, though in the Stable, for the space of an hour or more; then rub him exceeding well, and

Take two quarts of Ale, a good handful of Worm-wood, an ounce of Long-Pepper, Venice-Treacle two ounces and of Grains an ounce: add to these an ounce of the Flower of Brimstone and as much Rue dryed and rubbed into Powder; heat it hot, and give him it at twice, about the space of two hours difference between each other.

The *Tertian* Feaver is much the same in quality and condition with what I have named, and the Symptoms the same, though it somewhat more than the other participates of the Ague, for it at first takes him with a kind of a shaking; wherefore when you observe its approach,

Take of Stone-crop, an Herb so called, two handfulls; bruise it, and strain the Juyce into two quarts of Ale; drop into it then an ounce of the Oyl of Myrrh, and an ounce of Ginger beaten into Powder, make them hot, and give them the Horse to drink, sweetned with Sugar-candy and then Rack him a round pace in wholesome Air, but do not sweat him that he thereby may be endangered by contracting a cold; observing to let him drink no cold water till such time as you find the fit entirely gone, and that he has settled his Body by eating two quarts of the best dryed Oats.

As for the *Quartan* Feaver, it is much of the nature of the two former, only it alters the day, and often continues longer; for if a speedy remedy be not had it frequently continues, at divers times, for the space of half a year or longer: And if this happen in the Fall of the Leaf, it will be necessary to let Blood; which done, give your Horse what is hereafter directed:

Take Oyl of Bays an ounce; Coltsfoot the Herb, a good handfull; Knot-grass roots, or Scurvey-grass roots the like quantity; Lavender flowers or dryed Lavender a handfull: boil them in Ale or White-wine, and give him the Liquid part, ordering him as for the former.

For

For any diſeaſe and ſtoppage in the Liver.

The obſtructions in the Liver frequently happen through exceſs of humours, that not capable of being digeſted into good and wholeſome blood, clog and hinder the cavities of the paſſages, and by that means cauſe pains and ſickneſs. Now to remove theſe humours known by the dullneſs of the countenance, hanging of the head, often ſtraining, and inward groaning,

Take Agrimony, Cammomoil, Fumetory, Purſley, Wormwood, Succory Endive, the Seeds of Lupins, and Flowers of Mayweed, a handful; Licoris, Gentian and Spikenard, of each an ounce: bruiſe them well, and and boil them in a quantity ſufficient of Syder or Perry, and give it the Horſe very warm, and let him walk thereupon for the ſpace of an hour after; and for a fortnight after be ſparing in his diet, that the humours by this means may diſperſe and conſume.

For a Botch or Sorrance in the Groin of a Horſe a good Cure.

When by the Tumourouſneſs of the fleſh you perceive a ſwelling to ariſe in the Groin of a Horſe,

Take Shoomakers Wax, the white ſort, add to an ounce of it half an ounce of the Powder of Bithwort-roots, and as much *Amoniacum*, and over a gentle fire make them into a Plaiſter: which being ſpread upon a Leather, apply it to the place till the ſwelling is ripe for breaking; then Lance it, and take out the putrefaction; after that waſh the Sorrance with Water wherein Allom and Honey have been diſſolved, till you find it begin to heal; then anoint it with *Unguentum Ægyptiacum*, and bind it up.

For a general Mangineſs, the Remedy.

This happens through the corruption of the blood, and groſsneſs of humour, occaſioned by over-labouring, over-heating, and bad feeding, or any of theſe; and may be ſometimes catched by contagion from other Horſes; the ſign is an extraordinary itching, which you may obſerve by his ſcrubbing and the riſing of little Knots within the skin: which being perceived,

Take Verdegreaſe two ounces, common Soap a pound, Oyl of Spike two ounces, Linſeed-oyl a pint, Red-wine half a pint: incorporate them over a gentle fire, reducing them to the thickneſs of an Oyntment: having firſt let the Horſe Blood, anoint him with the Oyntment after the Scurf and Scabs are likewiſe rubbed off: and so continue to do for a week, or ſo long till you perceive the diſtemper to ceaſe by the dying of the Scabs, and the coming of good fleſh.

The Barbs, what they are, and how removed.

This troubleſome Sorrance happens under the tongue of the Horſe, being compoſed of two long Bags of fleſh like Paps of Nipples, growing as they abound with humour more or leſs, and hinder the Horſe much in his feeding, putting him to no ſmall trouble. Now to remedy it clip them off cloſe to the Jaw, and

Take of Allom an ounce, Honey the like quantity, Bay-ſalt a handfull, and the Juyce of a Mint a quart, of a pint: diſſolve and boil theſe in a quart of fair water, and waſh the roots of the Barbs till they heal. Some there are that adviſe Burning them off; but in my opinion, by reaſon of their ſituation, that is neither ſo eaſie to be done, nor ſafe, leaſt the Tongue-ſtring or ſmall Veins be thereby rendred uſeleſs, and conſequently the Horſe defective in his feeding.

For Blood-ſhot Eyes, an excellent Remedy.

The Eyes by ſtraining, blow, or ſuper-abundance of corrupt blood becoming red and rheumy; ſo that unleſs ſpeedily cured, they may turn to further prejudice, as not to blindneſs. To cure this,

Take the Juyce of a Lemon, the crumbs of White bread, Bole-armorick and a rotten Apple: bruiſe them together, and make of them a Cataplaſm or Plaſter. Then take the Powder of the Roots of Mallows, with that of a cruſt of brown Bread, and blow into the Eye, binding over them the Plaiſter, or rather Poultis, and ſo doing three or four times the Blood and Rheum will be driven back and diſperſed: but if it be ſo great that

his cannot conquer it, then bleed your Horſe in the Temple-veins.

For any Film, Bite, or Blow in the Eye, a Remedy.

Take Copras, that which is white, a quarter of an ounce, and the like quantity of Verdegreaſe: beat them to Powder, and dry them well upon a Plate or *Spatula*; and after that take of it to the quantity of half a dram, and blow it into the Eye with a Quill; then cloſe the Horſe's Eye a quarter of an hour, and after that waſh it with Eye-bright-water; and ſo continue to do till all your Powder is waſted, and then you will perceive a brightneſs in your Horſe's Eye, all grievances being vaniſhed.

To kill Lice, or remove Flies from offending your Horſe.

Take the Flower of Brimſtone an ounce, Quick-Silver well killed the like quantity; the Oyl of Spike two ounces: mix them with the Whites of two Eggs and then boil them in two quarts of ſtrong Urine, and anoint the Horſe therewith, and it will prevent either the annoyance, or cure it when contracted.

To rid a Horſe from any foulneſs or diſorder in the Body.

Take of Groundſel half a handfull, red Sage the like quantity, Smallage and Wormwood each a handfull: bread them ſmall, and boil them well in a pint and a half of Ale, into which put a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter, and an ounce of the Powder of *Mechocan*, give the liquid part to your Horſe to drink as vvarm as poſſible, and feed him with Maſhes for a day afterward.

For an extraordinary Bruiſe or Bite.

Take of *Caliminaris*, quenched in White-vvine, two drams; an ounce of the Juyce of Houſleek and two ounces of the Seeds of Mallovvs, vvith an ounce of Venice-Treacle, make them up into balls as big as Walnuts, and give them the Horſe in a quarter of a pint of Clad-oyl; and at the ſame time apply a Plaſter of Hemock and Barrows greaſe vvell ſtamped and mixed together, and this being done for a Week together, vvill vvork ſtrange effects in relation to a cure.

For a Horſe that is troubled with the Strangling, a Cure.

Take of Elder-buds, or the Bark of the Root of th Tree a good handfull; Wormwood, and the herb Me cury, of each half a handfull, and as much wild Ianſe boil them well in two quarts of Vinegar, and give the the Horſe, that is, the Liquid part as hot as m be, faſting.

To remedy the Swelling of a Horſe upon having eaten any inf tious thing in his Graſs or Provender that may, if not re died, prove dangerous.

This grievance is known by the ſlavering of t Beaſt, the ſtaring of the Eyes, and the riſing of t Belly, the beating of the Flanks, and a cold ſwea which perceived,

Take of the Juyce of Rue one pint, two quarts Milk and a pint of Olive-oyl: boil them together till third part be conſumed; and then ſweetning it wi brown Sugar, give it the Horſe.

For a Heart-burning or Waſting occaſioned thereby.

Take the Juyce of Wood-ſorrel or Field-ſorrel a pi Allom-powder two ounces, Hart's-horn an ounce, t Seeds of Pomgrannets two ounces, and Spring-wate quart: boil them well together and ſtrain out the Liqu part, give it the Horſe as hot as may be.

To prevent Staling Blood a remedy.

Take of Ale a quart, the Roes of two red Herrings, a three or four Cloves of Garlick: boil them togeth and give them the Horſe Morning and Evening, that the Liquid part.

Another excellent Remedy for the Farcy, vulgarly ca the Faſhion.

Take Rue, Garlick and Cloves of each half a handf bruiſe them well, and boil them in half a pint of *Aqua vi* then dip Wool or Lint into the Liquid part, and ſt it into the Horſe's Ears, binding it in: after that bru the Bark of the Elder, and making an inciſion in t Forehead, raiſe the Sin with your Pegging-horn, a ſtop it under the Skin, being firſt dipped in Oyl

Ro

Rosemary; then give the Horse a dose of the Juyce of Liverwort, mixed with half a pint of Canary, and after that warm Mashes.

An Approved Cure for any Sinew-strain or Over-reach.

Take Oyl of Bays an ounce, Linseed-oyl two ounces; put them into half a pint of *Aqua vitæ*, and being well incorporated, add Wine-Vinegar half a pint, and boil them to the consumption of a third part; then with your hand chafe it in, or with a warm cloth swathing it afterward to the best advantage; and in so doing you will soon find the effects.

Diseases in the Hoof how to remedy; And first for a Horse, that upon sundry occasions is apt to cast his Hoof.

The cause of the Hoofs falling off is various, for sometimes it proceeds from Gravel, and another time from the pricking of an Nail: and in these cases it cleaves downward as the humour settles; but if it happen by any grievance on the top of the Hoof, as the Quitter-bone, and the like, then must you look to the top of the Hoof; and when you there perceive it begin to divide from the flesh, or to open at any part, then take off the Shooe, open the Hoof, and pare it as near as may be to the Sole; after which steep the foot in Neatsfoot-oyl, and the Juyce of Hemlock, in which Allom has been dissolved; then make an Oyntment after this manner;

Take of Virgins-Wax two ounces, of Verdegrease an ounce, of Per-rosin three ounces, and Hog's Lard a quarter of a pound; to these add the Juyce of green Tobacco a quarter of a pint; make them into an Oyntment, and pour it into the divided place; which done, bind it up close with a thick Linnen-cloth; and in so often doing the flesh will be obliged to cleave to the Hoof, and render it firm, unless it be too far gone before you attempt it.

Hoof-bound; what it is, and how to remedy it.

This grievance proceeds from some defect in the Hoof or harm taken in the Colts-age, whilst it was tender,

or by the falling down of a humour; and the Symptoms are the flesh growing over it more than usual; the straitness or narrowness in disproportion to the Leg, and the sound of hollowness being struck with a Hammer or other material Instrument; which being well understood,

Take Hog's Lard a pound. Soap the like quantity, the Juyce of Baum a pound, Bay-leaves a handfull, the Juyce of Rue a quarter of a pint; Incorporate or concoct them well over a gentle fire, and steep the Hoof in the Liquid part for the space of an hour every morning; then dip a cloth in the Oyl of *Petrolum*, and bind it about it.

To soften or harden a Hoof the best way.

This Experiment is fitting to be known by all Farriers, not only for the advantage of Shooing, but for the Travel more or less of the Horse. Wherefore in the first place, if you perceive the Hoof to be hard and brittle, standing out, uncomely, then tye it with a Butress; and if you find it brittle, and not plyable to be pared or cut; then

Take of Lime unslaked an ounce, Common Soap the like quantity; dissolve these into a Lye made of Ash-wood-ashes; and having prepared a Cataplasm or Poultis of Groundsel, Marshmallows, Smallage, Succory and Sallendine fryed in Neatsfoot-oyl, after the Horse's hoofs has been steeped in the Lye for the space of an hour as warm as may well be endured, clap the Poultis to them, and stop the bottom of the foot well with Flax dipped in Tar.

To harden a Hoof as occasion requires.

If by going in moist ground or moist feeding the Hoof happen to be softned, so that it will not well bear a Shooe, or be prejudicial in Travelling; then to render it capable for either,

Take the Coles of burnt Leather a pound, the water wherein Lime has been slaked, and hot Flint-stones quenched, two quarts; add to them a quart of Lime-juyce and a pound of Bay-salt, and in the Liquid part either

either let the Horſe ſtand, or with it bathe his Hoofs; after which, Take Oyl of Tartar, or that of Brimſtone, and anoint them, binding a cloth over them, and ſuffer the Horſe to ſtand dry: And by thus often doing you will by experience find your expectation anſwered.

For any hurt or Cankerous ſore in or on the Hoof.

Take, if the ſeaſon permit, a pound of black Snails; if not, other Snails of any kind may ſerve the purpoſe; of Burdock-root's ſliced the like quantity; Oyl of Cammomoil four ounces, and Olive oyl a quart; boil them together till they are plyable to be layed Plaſter-wiſe to the place grieved; to which after you have waſhed the Sorrance with water wherein Elder has been boiled, apply them, ſupplying thoſe firſt layed with freſh every day, till you find the effects.

To oblige a Horſe to carry his Ears well; the way.

This defect happens either for want of a true proportion, or by a defect of the Nerves which refuſe to adminiſter ſo great a ſupply of ſtrength as may ſupport the Ears as they ought to ſtand for the ſake of Ornament. Now to ſtrengthen the Nerves or Sinews to that degree,

Take of Bear's Fat an ounce, Comfry-juyce the like quantity, Oyl of Amber a dram, the Root of black Hellebore, beaten into Powder, an ounce, and with Bees-wax half an ounce, and the Oyl of Roſes half a pint; make theſe into an Oyntment and anoint the roots of the Horſe's Ears as hot as may be well endured, repeating it for a week together.

For the grievance called the Frounce, *a Cure.*

This Sorrance is alſo called by ſome a *Camery*, and is no other than ſmall Knobs or Bladders on the roof of the Mouth, or upon the Tongue; and the cauſe, for the moſt part is the Horſe's feeding in wet or low Marſhes in froſty weather, or by eating unſavory Hay in which Vermine have piſſed or dunged; and further, ſome hold it to proceed from the Horſes licking up unſavory things tending to a Venemous quality. To remedy which,

Take Vinegar and Bay-ſalt, with the Juyce of Sage, and with them, after having let the Horſe Blood in the Veins under the tongue, rub the place grieved till the Knobs or Pimples bleed; and by often ſo doing they will diſappear.

For a Heat, which ſometimes occaſions a breaking out in the Mouth and Lips, the Cure.

This diſorder is accompanied with dryneſs, and proceeds from the heat of the ſtomach, by ſurfeits overheating, or a conſuming quality; and if not timely taken notice of, produces the infectious humour that creates the Canker: To addreſs which, Bleed the Veins in the Lips, which you may cauſe to appear by bending them the contrary way; and then waſh them with Salt and Vinegar, giving the Horſe water to drink wherein Coltsfoot has been boiled, or Fenegreek-ſeed, with his Provender.

Wolf-teeth what they are, and how to eaſe their Pains the ready way.

Theſe Teeth are too commonly growing in the upper Jaw next the grinders, which many times occaſion ſuch pain that the Horſe is fruſtrated in his eating, by being obliged to let his Provender fall out of his mouth; and the cauſe they are moſtly ſubject to this is, by reaſon they have frequently a hollowneſs within ſubject to receive the Rheums that ſettle in the Jaw; to remedy which, either draw them, or Launcing the Gumms that they may bleeed; waſh the Mouth each morning with Hyſop-water and Allom, the latter being diſſolved in the former.

To ſtaunch any Bleeding, a ſpeedy way.

If by occaſion of Wound or Sorrance your Horſe happen to bleed exceſſively, ſo that thereby, if not timely ſtopped, he may be weakned, or other ways endangered.

Take the Wool of a Hare or Coney, dip it in Vinegar, and then ſtrew upon it the Powder of Calcined Egg-ſhells, and apply it to the place; or you may for want of the former, dip it in Nettle-juyce and Bay-ſalt, or apply

to

to the Wound or Sorrance a Poultis of Hemlock and the Bark of Elder-root.

To supply the defect of the falling of the Creſt, a Remedy.

This uncomelineſs in a Horſe is the leaning of the upper part of the Neck, on which the Mane grows, to one or the other ſide, which is cauſed by weakneſs of the Sinews or Nerves, through a contraction of cold, or ſome flegmatick humour there engendred; or, on the other hand, upon the riſing of the fleſh through extraordinary fatneſs. To remedy which,

Take the Oyl of *Petrolum* two ounces, Linſeed-oyl half a pint; and having well waſhed the Creſt with Water wherein the Roots of Mallows have been boiled, and Allom diſſolved, anoint it with the Oyl; and in ſo continuing to do for a month, the Skin will contract; and more eſpecially, if upon every Application you clap two broad pieces of Deal, or other Board, on each ſide; and ſo bind it up in due order, and let the Horſe blood in the contrary Neck-vein.

To Cure Mangineſs, or the like diſorder, in the Creſt.

Take Hog's Lard a pound, Verdegreaſe four ounces, Flower of Brimſtone four ounces: add to theſe a pint of Beef-broth very ſalt, and diſſolve what is to be diſſolved therein: Then having rubbed off the Scabs and Scurf till they bleed, waſh the place grieved therewith as hot as may be well endured for a week together; and lay after that a cloth dipped in green Oyntment thereon This will alſo hinder the Hair from falling off, eſpecially the former.

The Navel gall, what it is, and its Remedy.

This grievance is no other than a bruiſe or hurt with an unfit or uneaſie Saddle, or that part of the back that is oppoſite to the Navel, and for that cauſe only is ſo called; it is known by a ſoft ſwelling in the place bruiſed; and its Cure is as followeth:

Take the Whites of two Eggs, an ounce of Copras two ounces of the Oyl of Bays and of Marſhmallows, Smallage, Groundſel and Cammomoil, each a hand-

full: ſtamp them in a Mortar, and pour the Liqui to them; by which means make them into a Poultis and frying them, lay them as hot as may be to th place grieved.

For a Sitfaſt or horney Excreſſence under the Saddle, wher by the Horſe is diſabled from carrying it in good order be ought.

This Sorrance appears like a piece of old Leathe upon the Horſe's back, and is commonly the relick ſome old bruiſe or deſperate Saddle-gall not well cure and obligeth the Skin to ſtick faſt to the fleſh. T cure which.

Take Oyl of Vitriol, and anoint the place till it ha looſned the Excreſſence: after which take it off by inciſ on, and anoint the place with Verdigreaſe and Hog's Lard hot, and waſh it after with the Juyce of Mint til it be new skinned: and to make the Hair come, waſh i with the Juyce of *Cardus Benedictus*, or that of Hemlock.

For any Knob or Wen near the Saddle-skirt, or the Sides of the Horſe, a Remedy.

To remove this, Waſh it firſt with hot Wine-Lees, and afterward bathe it with Oyl of Cammomoil or Marſhmallows: Then to draw it to a head, lay on a Plaſter of Stone-pitch and Turpentine; which being done, Lance it with your ſharp-pointed Fleme, and apply a Plaſter of *Oxecrotium* to draw out the putrefacti on, and then with Hog's Lard ſupple it; and if the Sore be deep, Tent it with a Linnen Tent, dipped in Bees wax and Honey melted together.

For Weakneſs in the Back, a ſtrengthning Remedy.

This happens frequently through Coldneſs or Wa try Humours afflicting the Sinews, or in gelly'd wa ter ſetling in the Joynts, or by his too often covering the Mares, or ſuch like. Now to corroborate a Horſe defective herein,

Take Horſe-radiſh Roots a pound, Bay-leaves two handfuls, the Bark of Elder the like quantity: boil them in Man's Urine, and with the liquid part bathe the

e Back as hot as is convenient, giving him for diet ats and Splent-beans; and each Morning fasting a ball ade in this manner:

Take Licorish-powder two ounces, Hart's-horn beaten Powder an ounce, Fenegreek and Hysop-seed flam-ed, of each two ounces; wet them with as much allaga-wine as will make them up into balls about the igness of Pigeon's Eggs.

or the Swelling in the Cods of a Horse naturally, or occasio-ned by any Bruise, &c.

Take Dill seeds or Fennel-seeds an ounce, the Juyce f Orpin a quarter of a pint, Bole-armorick two oun-es, the Juyce of Garlick the like quantity: make these, ith Hog's Lard, into an Oyntment, and anoint the lace grieved therewith as warm as may be well endured.

For Burstenness, or the Rupture in a Horse.

This grievance is the breaking of the Rim or Film that holds up the Bowels from falling into the Cods, nd either happens by overstraining in riding upon a ull belly, or the Horse's leaping beyond his strength, nd is by most Farriers held incurable. But since it o happens that a bursten Horse may, notwithstanding, n some measure be fit for service, I shall give such directi-ons as may the better enable him for it.

Take your Horse to whom this misfortune has be-fallen and fasten Ropes with running Nooses to his feet; then putting Ropes through them, cast him upon soft straw, and draw him up by casting the Ropes over a Beam in the Barn or Stable; then with your hands gently separate the Bowels from the Stones, put-ting the former in their proper place, and retaining the latter; withall, anointing the Cods with Hog's-Lard and the Juyce of Endive, gently chafing them till they begin to shrink up: Then with a soft List tye the Cod as near to the belly as may be, and cut out the Stone were the Film is broken, sewing up the Cod with thread dipped in the Oyl of Turpentine; and so keep your Horse for the space of a fortnight in a warm Stable,

with

with heartning Diet; anointing his Cods with Hog's Lard and Allom-Powder, melted together over a gentle fire.

The Art of discovering hidden Griefs or Ailments in a Horse, and from what they proceed.

The better to be the least couzened in Horse-flesh, is to see one lead him before you in a string to several paces; and though you cannot so know his grief or ailment, yet if you well observe how he takes up his Legs, the defect will appear by his favouring one more than the other: but if nothing of that appear, then back him and ride him at all paces, so that you or your friend who stands by may be convinced by his going how he stands affected. Now if so it happen he sets out stiff, and handles his Legs confusedly, then does his grief proceeds from cold settlements of watry humours in or near the Joynt; for which chafe his Legs morning and evening with *Aqua vitæ* and Oyl of Turpentine; but if it proceed from heat, as Surfeits, and the like, then he will halt the more he is ridden or chafed, by being heated; and then anoint his Limbs with Neatsfoot-oyl, the Marrow of a Swine: or wash them with Water wherein Copras has been dissolved and look he be kept in a clean warm Stable.

The Bone-spavin, what it is, &c.

This Excrescence or Sorrance is a Knob of a boney substance growing under the Joint, on the inside the hoof, as big sometimes as a Pullets Egg; and either proceeds from the too early pressing the little Bones in those parts by hard Labour, or from the settlement of bad humours fed by the Master-vein that descends to those parts. This many times is so troublesome to a Horse, that it makes him go down lame. Now the best way to remove and cure this Sorrance is this:

Take a Pen-knife and lay open the Skin about the boney Excrescence; and having a Chisle or Knife for that purpose, strike off, or pare away the bone till you come as near as may be to the quick: then having ready a Plaister

ſter of Bees-wax and Verdigreaſe well mixed by melting, bind it on, but ſo that it may not afflict the Vein. and renew it every other day for the ſpace of a week; then with with Hog's Lard cleanſe and anoint it for two or three days more; and finally, waſh it with Vinegar, and bind it up that it may heal. For want of Verdigreaſe, you may take the Powder of burnt Allom.

For a Haw in the Eye.

This happens moſt commonly by a blow or over-riding and greatly impairs the ſight: To remove which,

Take burnt Allom, and the Powder of Juniper-berries, and blow them into the Eye, keeping it cloſe for a quarter of an hour; and ſo by often doing you will perceive the Haw looſened by its wrinkling up, then with your nails take hold of it, and draw it forth; or if you cannot ſo do continue the Powder till it is eaten off.

For the falling out of the Fundament, a Remedy.

The falling out of the Fundament often happens by an extraordinary Laxativeneſs, or a coldneſs contracted in the Bowels, which creates a ſlimey matter: And in this caſe anoint it with Oyl of Spike, and ſprinkling on it the Powder of Turmerick put it up in order, and binding a ſtring about the Tail, bring the ſtring between the Legs, and by faſtening it to a ſtrap croſs the Shoulders keep in the Fundament, ſuffering the Tail to continue ſo faſtned for the ſpace of twelve hours; and this Method may be uſed in caſe of the Womb of a Mare's falling out, &c.

To preſerve a Hoof from decaying, &c.

Take half a pound of Tar, a quart of Vinegar, half a pound of Hog's greaſe, a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Garlick, two ounces of *Olibanum*, and as much Bees-wax; boil them together till the moiſture be ſo far conſumed, that it becomes the thickneſs of an Oyntment, and with it at ſeaſonable times anoint the Hoof; and dipping Flax into it, ſtop the hollow part if you find any defect there, or ſuſpect any will happen.

Interfering, what it is, and the Remedy.

This happens when by the unneveneſs of a Horſe's ſteps,

or

or the bad ſhooing, he cuts his fore Fetlock joint on the inſide with his hinder ſhoe; which by its not being well looked to, many times feſters and becomes a ſore Scab: To cure which,

Take freſh Butter half a pound, Roſin the like quantity, Nerve-oyl half a pint; melt them together, and when they are of a thickneſs, ſpread a Plaſter, and lay it to the place grieved, ſuppling it before with Hog's greaſe, or the Oil of Cammomoil.

A falſe Quarter, what it is.

This is a defect in the Hoof, in ſuch a manner, as if a piece was put in, having on either ſide it a Seam or Rift, which frequently obliges the Horſe to halt on that part, and is generally cauſed by ſome prick or hurt when a Colt, To remedy which, at leaſt to give the Horſe eaſe,

Take off the Shoe, and pare the Hoof, on that ſide as much as may be, and then ſupply the defect with Toe dipped in melted Turpentine and Bees-wax, not over travelling, or uſing your Horſe to dirty ways.

The Melt on the Heel.

This is no other than a dry Scab growing on the heel, occaſioned ſometimes by the Horſe's ſtanding wet and dry over long or unſeaſonably; and at other times through corrupt blood ſettling there: To remedy which,

Take of black Soap a quarter of a pound, Honey the like quantity; diſſolve them in a pint of Vinegar, then add the Powder of burnt Allom two ounces, and Rye-meal a like quantity: waſh the Sorrance well with water and ſalt, and then ſpread the before-mentioned materials, and apply them Plaſter-wiſe, having firſt taken off the Scurf or Scab as clean as may be; and ſo for a week together continue the ſupplement.

An excellent Remedy for any Strain or Swelling.

Take of *Aqua vitæ* a pint, melt into it a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter, and mix with them a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Hellebore: then with the Liquids make a Plaiſter of Rye-meal and apply it as hot as may well be endured to the place grieved: This will

will likewiſe aſſwage any ſwelling, or the like diſorder.

How to remedy the harm done a Horſe by unadviſedly and unskilfully letting Blood.

Many times a Horſe being let Blood by an unskilfull hand, or ſuffered thereupon to take cold, or the wind to poſſeſs the empty Veins which cauſes ſwellings in the Neck, or other diſorders. To remedy it,

Take Sheeps-ſuet half a pound, the Juyce of Hemlock half a pint, and four ounces of the Oyl of Cammomoil: which being made into an Oyntment rub and chafe his Neck with them, as hot as may be, morning and evening, giving him warm water to drink wherein Fennel-ſeeds are ſcattered, and cover his Neck overwith a warm cloth, giving him gentle heats.

For the Leproſie in Horſes, a Remedy, with the Cauſe.

Take *Reſalgar*, otherwiſe called *Arſnick*, and Hog's Lard well tryed: incorporate them to an Oyntment over a gentle fire; and having drawn the Horſe's head up ſtrait to the Rack, to prevent his diſorders, anoint the place with a feather, and ſuffer it for the ſpace of two hours to ſoak in; and after that boil the Roots of Burdocks in Chamber-lye, and waſh with it the Oyntment clean away: which done, give the Horſe meat of the beſt to hearten and encourage him to endurance; and ſo proceed to do every other day for ſix days ſucceſſively.

This grievance, or dangerous Malady, befalls a Horſe by extraordinary riding, and ſuffering the Horſe to cool, and conſequently ſurfeit: or from the rankneſs of blood which produces evil humours, and they not timely let out, force their way in Botches and dry Sorrances, which upon dreſſing muſt be rubbed off to prepare the way for the Oyntment.

For any diſeaſe in the Lungs an excellent Remedy.

The Diſeaſes in the Lungs proceed frequently from extraordinary cold and flegmatick humours, or, on the contrary, from hot inflammations, cauſed by Surfeits, or the like; either of which, if not timely remedied, tend

to

to consumption and rottenness, and are known by the working of the Ribs, and beating of the Flanks; but more especially by his coughing weakly, and the slow beating of what has been before mentioned, with other the like signs.

To cure these, Take of the herb of Melliot commonly called *Horse-Lungwort*; bruise it in a Mortar, and squeeze out the Juyce to the quantity of two ounces; of Fenegreek-seeds and Madder, each an ounce, with as much of Rosemary-seed, and give him them, the latter being well bruised in a quart of warm Ale. every other day, for the space of fourteen days, fasting; and after the dose, let him have Oats washed in warm Beer and warm Mashes, keeping him in a close Stable, without Exercising him, unless in a fair clear day; or for want of these,

Take a young Snake, open it, and put into the belly Rue and Snakeweed; shred, with the fat of a Hedge-hog, as much as the belly of the Snake, being embowelled, will hold; and let it be roasted before a gentle fire, saving the Oyl or Dripping that falls from it carefully in an Earthen-pan; and having shaved off the hair on the breast, anoint it with this Oyntment, chafing it in with your hot hand; and so do by renewing the Oyntment as often as you see it convenient.

For the swelling of the Horse's Legs, the Cure.

The cause of the Swelling in the Legs comes through cold humours settling therein, or over-much riding in foul or dirty ways, overheats or over-strains, or by Molten grease falling down into the Legs; and in this case having let blood in the most convenient Veins, as near as may be to the swelling; to take away the corrupt blood, then

Take the Lees of White-wine or Rhenish-wine half a pint, Cammomoil half a handfull, Cummin-seeds an ounce, Wheat flower two handfulls; boil them all together, adding in the boiling half a pint of Verjuyce and so lay them hot as a Poultis to the place grieved,

grieved, renewing it till you find it draws the ſwelling to a head: which being done,

Take Shoomakers Wax an ounce, the like quantity of Virgins Wax; half an ounce, of Bole-armorick, and half a pint of Olive-oyl; the Yolks of two Eggs, and half a quartern of Honey: beat theſe well together over a gentle fire, till you perceive them well incorporated into the thickneſs of a Salve; and then ſpreading part of it upon Sheeps-leather, apply it Plaſter-wiſe till the corruption, by often renewing it, be drawn away: then waſh the place with Balm-water, and heal it up with Hog's-greaſe and honey, incorporated over a gentle fire.

The flying Worm, what it is, and how to Cure it.

This is known generally by the name of a Tetter or Ring-worm, occaſioned by an extraordinary heat in the Blood, and other foul diſorders creating a virilent or ſharp fiery humour, and for the moſt part ſeizes upon the Rump or Crupper of the Horſe, and frequently by not being regarded, turns to a Canker; though indeed it will ſeize; and ſo is found to do upon any part of the Body that is ſubject to fleſhyneſs or abundance of blood, and cauſe the Horſe to rub himſelf in an extraordinary manner: and is known by the falling away of the hair, and the Horſe's continual rubbing.

To cure this, Let the Horſe blood as ſoon as may be in that part where it has ſeized him; and then

Take an ounce of Verdegreaſe, two ounces of Burdock-juyce, two ounces of Soot, a quarter of an ounce of the Oyl of Tartar: and with the weight of all theſe in Hog's Lard, make them up into an Oyntment, bathing it with it as hot as may be endured: and ſo continue to do till the Malady ceaſes to ſpread, and conſequently dyes.

Excellent Directions for the prevention of Diſeaſes in Horſes, at ſundry times, &c.

Obſerve in this caſe to bleed your Horſe the beginning;

ning of *April* in the Neck-veins, when the Sign of Life is not in that part; and ſo every day in the Month of *April*, give him what I order: As thus;

Take old Rye, not muſty, nor any ways diſordered, impaired by ſhrevling up, nor any way foul with dirt, Lome-ſtones, or the like, take to the quantity of a Buſhel; and having ſprinkled it with the Juyce of Baum, and again dried it by ſpreading in the Sun; put it into an Iron boiling-pot without water, and there by perpetual ſtirring, parch it to that degree that it becomes black and hard: then take it out, and put it into a cloſe dry place, and each day give your Horſe a quart of it, beaten to Powder, amongſt his Oats: and ſo do in the Month of *October*, likewiſe remembring to let him Blood: And by this means his blood will be ſo well tempered, that unleſs ſome extraordinary matter happen as exceeding heats occaſioning ſurfeits, too rank feeding, or damp lying, the Horſe will undoubtedly be kept in a good temper of body during the whole year: And the better to confirm him, give him this drink as ſoon as he is let blood, *viz.*

Take of White-wine a pint, infuſe into it Cinamon, Cloves and Saffron, of each three drams; Caſſa and Myrrh, of each the like quantity: let them ſimper over a gentle fire for the ſpace of an hour; and then being ſweetned with Sugar-candy or fine Sugar, give it him blood-warm faſting, and keep him warm with a cloth for the ſpace of two hours after without Meat.

A Cure for a ſore or defective Mouth.

The ſores or diſorders in the Mouth are occaſioned either by bad blood or exceſſive colds, creating rheums and noiſome vapours that afflict the Pallate, for there they generally begin; and from thence deſcending to the Jaws, do in a great Meaſure obſtruct the feeding, and hinder the ſhutting of the Mouth: Now when it happens in the Pallate only, the beſt expedient is to let blood in the Mouth by cutting the third barr, or as your diſcretion leads you.

The

The Horſe being let blood, Take of ſtrong old Cheeſe four ounces, and a Root of Garlick: bruiſe them well, and boil them in water wherein Plantane has been concocted, and with the Liquid part waſh the Mouth and Tongue of the Horſe, as hot as it may well be endured; ſo continuing often to do, till you find the grievances to decreaſe; and if it be ſo far gone, that this proves not effectual,

Take a pint of Verjuyce, a handfull of Bay-ſalt, a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Houſleek, and a pennyworth of *Diaſcordium*: boil them well, and having waſhed his Mouth with Savin-water, or water wherein Savin has been concocted, give him the before-mentioned potion to drink luke-warm.

For the Mellet in the Heels, a Cure.

Take three ounces, of Caſtle-ſoap, a pound of Engliſh Honey, Allom two ounces, and of Lime juyce or Verjuyce a quarter of a pint, with half a handfull of Bean-flower: incorporate them over a gentle fire, and having reduced them to a convenient thickneſs, bind a part of it with Leather or thick Linnen upon the place grieved, ſuffering it, without renewal, to continue there for the ſpace of five days; and between each renewal waſh the place well with Beef-broth, keeping his Leg moiſt and roped up, for ſome days after.

The Stavers, their ſigns, cauſe, and cure.

This diſtemper is known by a dizzineſs in the Head, a dullneſs in the Eyes, and diſorderly hanging of the Jaws, and proceeds in chief, from corrupt blood and infectious vapours that infect the brain, and conſequently put the whole frame out of order. And this diſeaſe few Horſes altogether eſcape.

The cure is, to let him Blood in the Temple-veins or Neck-veins; and having a potion made after this manner, give it him hot. *viz.*

Take a handfull of Savin, the like quantity of Rue, an ounce of Ruburb, and an ounce of Mithridate: give him theſe Ingredients, the Liquid part well boiled

in a quart of Spring-water, ſweetned with brown Sugar or Moloſſus.

For the Stone, a very good Remedy.

This diſtemper is occaſioned by groſs humours, which ſettling in the Reins or Bladder, do, in proceſs of time, by the help of heat and moiſture, grow to a hardneſs, and ſo obſtruct the paſſage of the Urine; and by grating thoſe tender parts cauſe exceeding pain and diſorder to the creature ſo afflicted. To diſſolve or remove the Stone ſo contracted,

Take the Roots of Nettles, Parſley, Fennel and Sperage of each four ounces, of Saxafrage and Dodder, each a handfull: bruiſe and boil them in a quart of White-wine and a pint of Vinegar, untill a third part be waſted: then add a handfull of Bay-ſalt, and half a pint of Olive-oyl, with half a pound of Honey; and having ſtrained out the thin part as hot as may be, let him drink it faſting: and ſo continue to do for the ſpace of a week together, and you will find the pains will ceaſe.

To take away a Wen in the Neck, or any part of the Horſe's Body, without danger.

Theſe Sorrances are generally cauſed by the aſſembling of bad humours to one place, and their contracting into a Tumour. To remove them therefore,

Take the Oyl of Bays, Water of Tartar, and Soapboylers Lees, mix them well; and being very hot, dip a cloth therein, and lay it upon the place grieved; continuing often ſo to do; and the humours thereby being diſperſed the ſwelling will ſink and diſappear.

The Crownet-Scab, what it is; together with the Cure.

This is a troubleſome Sorrance, being a Scab round the corners of the hoof very cankerous and dangerous, and frequently comes by a Horſe's running in wet and mirey ground, eſpecially in Winter-time, whereby the cold has power to contract the groſs and diſordered humours; and is known by the hairs ſtanding up, the unevenneſs of the Crownet and the watry humour that proceeds from thence: Wherefore to cure it, Take

Take Verdegreaſe an ounce, Ruſty Bacon-fat two ounces, Powder of Hart's-horn an ounce: waſh the place with Beef-broth; and having made the before-mentioned materials into an Oyntment, anoint the place hot as may be endured; and continue ſo to do for a week together: after which anoint it with Oyl of Bays or Roſemary.

To draw out a Thorn or Stump, or any Iron, or ſharp thing gotten into the fleſh.

If you cannot come at the cauſe of this kind of Sorrance, ſo as to draw it out with your fingers or Pincers; then mollifie the ſwelling or part where you conceive it to be; and,

Take of Burgundy-pitch an ounce, and of black Soap two ounces: ſtamp the Roots of Water-lillys to the quantity of both the former; and ſpreading them Plaſter-wiſe, lay them to the place a night and a day, and thereby the ſwelling will not only be ſunk or depreſſed, but the head of the Thorn or Iron will appear to that degree, that it may eaſily be taken out: after which apply a Plaſter of *Diaculum* or *Oxecrotium* to bring away the feſtered matter if any be found there, and ſo heal it with Green Oyntment.

For a Strain in the Coffin-Joynt, or Socket of the Hoof.

This Sorrance happens by a ſuddain ſhort ſlip, and is not thought of by many Farriers, who are of the opinion, That under the hoof there can be no ſlip or ſtrain, though the contrary appears: and this is found out by taking up the foot, and bowing the Hoof from ſide to ſide; and on that ſide you perceive the Horſe to be pained in ſo doing, on that ſide is the danger. This being perceived,

Take of Beef-brine a pint, and as much tried Suet; ſet them on the fire, and let them conſume to a third part; then add Wheat-meal and the Juyce of Ale-hoof or Ground-ivy half a pound, or ſo much that they may be made up into the thickneſs of a Poultis; when having pared the hoof at the bottom to the quick,

quick, ſpread ſome of it very hot, and ſtop it in with Flax: and ſo renew it every other day, till you perceive by your Horſe's going the grief removed; and the better to keep it on, you may clap a croſs ſtick under the ſhooe, or cover the whole foot with a pitched cloth, or a thick ſole of Leather, will do the ſame office: but obſerve that during the cure, you ſuffer him not to go in wet and dirty ground.

For a Horſe that is perpetually ſick or out of order, by retaining a ſpice of former ſurfeits not perfectly cured.

Having let your Horſe blood take him up into a warm Stable, and prepare two ounces of Alloes *Sucatrina*, finely beaten to Powder; Rowl them up in Butter that has been tempered with the Juyce of Rue, and give him the compoſition in Pellets as big as Walnuts in the morning faſting, having prepared his body for the reception thereof, by dieting him ſome days before with ſcalded Bran and boiled Barley, refuſing on this occaſion to give him hard meats till three days after, ſuffering his drink to be White-water, and that very warm. Now this White-water is no other than water wherein Flower or Bran is ſcattered, or Bread finely grated and ſifted, *&c.*

For a Cold in the Summer when the Horſe is defective in filling, or by too rank feeding.

Take of the Powder of the Root of Scabeous an ounce and a half, of red Stone Sugar half a pound, and of Olive-oyl four ounces: add to theſe half a pint of Canary, or as much as will diſſolve them to a thinneſs, that the Horſe may eaſily ſwallow them; and ſo give them to him luke-warm in a Drenching-horn; and after them a gentle heat, in ſuch manner, that the humours may be ſtirred and brought away by Excrement of Sweat, Urine, *&c.* And this may be given in caſe of any extraordinary over-heating, by Racing, and the like.

A through Splint or Screw-pin, what it is; together with the Cure.

This Sorrance happens on both ſides of the Legs ſo oppoſite one to the other, as if it riveted it; and from thence takes the denomination of Screw-pin, and is a kind of a ſinewy Excreſſence: Wherefore to remove it, for it is very troubleſome to the Horſe,

Take the handle of a Hammer, or the Blood-ſtick, and beat it therewith on either ſide, till you have reduced it to a ſoftneſs: then having an ounce of the Oyl of *Riggrum*, or by ſome called *Reggium*, anoint it therewith, and bind a cloth about it; and by frequent dreſſings the Excreſſence will ſink, and reſtore the Leg to a flatneſs; for want of the before-mentioned Oyl, Take that of *Petrolum*, and it will work much the like effects.

To render a brittle Hoof firm and ſervicable.

Take of the Juyce of Garlick and Rue, or Herb-a-grace of each four ounces; Powder of burnt Roach-Allom, half a pound; Hog's-greaſe and new Cow-dung, of each a pound: mix them altogether, and being made into a Poultis over a gentle fire, apply it hot to the hoof, binding it about it, and ſtuffing it in under the ſhooe; and in often renewing it the cure will be perfected.

To Cure the Anbury.

Sear it off with a ſharp hot Iron, and having Hog's-greaſe and Verdegreaſe well tempered together, anoint the Roots therewith at ſundry times, *&c.*

To prevent a Horſe's piſſing Blood, an excellent Remedy.

Take the herb called Harts-Tongue half a handfull, Piony-roots ſliced an ounce, the Juyce of Bettony half a pint: boil them in ſtale Beer, and give them him as hot as he is capable to endure, the Liquid part only: and ſo continue to do in the Morning faſting for a week together and the defect will ceaſe.

For a broken Knee the Remedy.

Take Urine, heat it well, and waſh the Sorrance, eaſing it

it of the Gravel if any be contracted, by falling or t
like: Then take Turpentine an ounce, Rosin the li
quantity, Hog's Lard two ounces, and the blades of Lee
a handfull, with two ounces of the Powder of burnt A
lom: bruise the Leeks, press out the Juyce, and melt
with the rest, to the thickness of a Salve: and th
spreading it Plaster-wise, apply it to the place grieve
anointing it between whiles with Oyl of Coriande
seeds or Anniseeds.

For the Dropsey *in a Horse.*

This distemper proceeds from the looseness of the flesh
occasioned by moist and unwholesome feeding, whereb
flegmatick and watry humours are ingendred in th
blood, which sweating as it were through the Veins
are retained between the skin and the flesh, or in th
spongy flesh, occasioning Tumours and unseemly swel
lings: To remove which,

Take two handfulls of Parsley-seeds, the like of An
niseeds and Bay-berries: with one handfull of Junipe
berries: bruise them together in a Mortar, and boil
ing them in Verjuyce, sweetned with brown Sugar
give the Horse to the quantity of a pint to drink
first and last chafing the swelled or tumourous place
with your hand, or Hard wisps of Hay: and so continu
ing them for a week together, you will find the flesh be
come firm, and the watry humours disperse.

To joyn a Sinew that is cut.

Cleanse the Wound with the Juyce of Nettles and
white Sugar; then take the Oyntment of Tobacco, and
a Plaster of *Diaculum*: apply them, and bind up the
Wound very strait.

For a wound or Hurt in the Tongue, a Remedy.

This Sorrance being occasioned by the Halter or
Bitt, in having to do with too hard a hand: To cure
it, Take of the Juyce of Sallendine half a pint, as
much of that of Bugloss: heat them over a gentle
fire, adding two ounces of Honey of Roses, and as muc
Allom; and with them anoint the grieved place, an
and you will find it quickly heal.

F

For the Itch in the Tail, or any other part.

This disorder proceeds from rank blood, through foul eding: Therefore having bled your Horse well, Take Wood-ashes a peck, Burdock-roots a handfull two, Man's Urine two gallons, and the like quantity water wherein Tobacco-stalks have been steeped: il them up into a Lye, and with it wash the grieved rt, when it is very hot.

Another excellent Remedy for the Tetter.

Take of the Roots of Elecampane and red Dock, of ch a handfull: steep them a week in Urine, adding o handfulls of Bay-salt: boil them in the Urine till om two quarts it become one, and with it wash the rrance, after it has been well rubbed and chafed, that e Liquids may the better sink in.

For a Hurt or Wring in the Withers.

This commonly happens by the straitness of the ddle, or indiscretion of the Rider; and is known by a velling or Tumour on the Back, &c. To remedy this, Take a handfull of Wheat-flower, wet it, with half pint of White-wine Vinegar, adding three ounces Honey, and an ounce of the Juyce of Hemlock; mix em well over a gentle fire, and apply them Plaster-se to the place grieved: or for want of these,

Take Water wherein Barley and Fennel have been iled, and wash the places with it as warm as may ell be endured.

Worms of any sort in the Body of a Horse, how to kill and remove them.

Take a handfull of the tops of Broom, and of Sa-n the like quantity: bruise them together with as uch Featherfew, then with fresh Butter and Trea-e make them up into balls the bigness of Pigeon's ggs; and when he is fasting in the Morning, give m three of them and let him fast three hours after; en give him Oats, but refrain giving him Water till e Evening: and in this doing four or five times, the Worms will be destroyed and evacuated.

An excellent Salve for any ſort of Wound, how to make a apply it.

Take of clarified Roſin a pound, the like quanti of Bees-wax, Sheeps ſuet half a pound, Frankincen and Storax of each half an ounce; Gumaraback fo ounces, Hog's Lard a pound and a half, and of th Juyce of green Tobacco half a pint: diſſolve and me them over a gentle fire, adding in the melting fo ounces of Turpentine, and the like quantity of Re wine; and ſo boil them up into the thickneſs of a Salv by drawing off the watry part, if any remain, and appl it Plaiſter-wiſe on Leather or thick Linnen, in caſe of an Wound, Sorrance, Bruiſe, or other Affliction.

An Impoſtkume, to ripen and cure.

The greater or leſſer quantity of matter relatin to the Impoſthumation, may be diſcerned by the hea being more or leſs; as alſo the throbbing and beating then to break it. Apply the Roots of white Lilli and Marſhmallows, the Flowers or Roots of Mar blabs; bruiſe them, in the beſt wiſe, in a Mortar wit Hog's Lard and Wheat flower, and Poultis-wiſe ap ply them to the ſwelling; which being thereby brough to a head, Lance it; and having dreined the corruptio apply a Plaiſter of the before receited Salve; and by o ten renewing the Plaiſter, it will draw the corruptio from all parts, and render the Horſe ſound and ſafe.

For any Internal ſickneſs, another good Remedy, never befor publiſhed.

If you would have your Horſe be moſtly exempte from infirmities, eſpecially ſuch as are Internal; afte having let him Blood in due ſeaſon, or as the Malad requires it, and given him, if need require it, an ope ing Clyſter made of Cammomoil, Marſhmallows, th Flowers of Archangel and Comfory, boiled in Milk or Ale

Take round *Ariſtolechia*, *Gentian*, and the roots o Three-leav'd-graſs, of each two ounces; Race, Gi ger, and Nutmegs, of each an ounce; the Seeds o Cardamoms and the Juyce of Hyſop, of each two ounces

Indi

ndian Spikenard two drams; Licoras an ounce; *Diaſ-ordium* two ounces; Raiſins in the Sun a pound, and welve blew Figs; boil theſe in a Pottle of White-ine till a third part be conſumed, and give it the orſe to drink warm.

This is ſucceſsfully given in caſe of *Surfeit*, *Feaver*, *Peſtilence*, *Pains in the Belly* or *Stomach*, *Internal bruiſes*, *Inflammations of the Liver*, or *Conſumption of the Lungs*, and the like.

For the Ach, weakneſs, or numbneſs of the Joynts.

The occaſion of this grievance comes either from an nhappy ſtrain, or a contraction of gellied watry humours, auſed by cold, and too much moiſture: To cure and emove which Aches and Pains, &c.

Mix *Acopium* with Canary; and when you find it ery warm, anoint the place grieved therewith, cha-ng it in with your hand, or a hot cloth, and in a eeks time it will remove the diſorder, eſpecially if proceed from cold; but if from a ſtrain, Then ake *Aqua vitæ* and the flower of Brimſtone, with a mall quantity of the Oyl of Spike; heat them hot, nd with a hot cloth anoint the place grieved, bathing nd ſuppling it in, ſwathing the place about with a Row-r dipped in melted Bees wax and Hog's Lard.

How to ſtay any violent Looſneſs

This diſorder in the Body happens many ways, but eſpe-ially by raw and unwholſome feeding; To remedy which, Take of the Juyce of Sloes a pint, half a pint of he Juyce of Sennegreen; Bean-flower and Bole-armo-ick, each two ounces; Allom one ounce; boil them ogether to the conſumption of a third part; and hen making that up with Milk, give it the Horſe faſting; nd ſo do for three days ſucceſſively.

The Lampas; *what it is, and how to Cure it.*

The *Lampas* is no other than a ſwelling that pro-eeds from rank blood, and appears in proud fleſh on he inſide of the Lips; the way to deſtroy it is, when

you have gagged the Horſe's mouth that he cannot ſhut it, take an Iron with a flat top, the ſhape of which you find in the Margin; and heating it red-hot, burn away the fleſh; and then rub the place with a roaſted Onion and Bay-ſalt, and in a ſhort time the ſwelling will diſappear, and the Horſe be better able to eat his meat.

For the Fig in the foot of a Horſe, the Cure, &c.

This Sorrance is a lump of unnatural fleſh that grows upon the Fruſh of the heel in the ſhape of a Fig, and is frequently cauſed by the defect of thoſe that undertake to cure a wound or hurt in that part, occaſioned by a ſtub or thorn. And now to remove this,

Cut away ſo much of the hoof that by the means of the Inciſion there may be a ſpace or difference between the Fruſh and the Sole: Then dip a Spunge in an Oyntment made of Verdegreaſe, Bees-wax and Hogs Lard; and binding it hard on, it will in three or four times ſo doing deſtroy the proud fleſh, and render the Horſe s foot ſound and well.

For the Flanks, a diſeaſe ſo called, and the way to remedy it.

This proceeds from a wrench, ſtroak or pain in the Back which cauſes a ſwelling, &c. And to prepare it for the remedy, ſhave away the hair where you find the grief: Then make a charge and apply it; which may be made with ſucceſs after this manner:

Take *Bole-armorick*, *Conſolida Majora*, *Galbanum*, *Maſtick*, *Per-roſin* and *Apoponax*, of each two ounces or leſs, according to the more or leſsneſs of the place grieved: b uiſe them well to a Powder, adding of *Sanguis Draconis* and *Sol-Armoniack*, of each three drams; Wheat-meal, and the Whites of Eggs, with ſo much Vinegar as will make them into a Cataplaſm or Plaiſter, commonly called a Charge, and lay it warm to the place grieved, being ſpread upon a Sheep-

skin

kin : And this being renewed four or five times, will effect the cure.

The Shackle-gall, and its Cure.

This is generally occaſioned by the fretting of the Shackle or Fetlock, and ſometimes by Ropes with which the Horſe is Teaded : to cure which,

Take a good handful of Plantane, and boil it in Milk to a ſoftneſs : then take ſix ounces of Allom, and two ounces of Sugar-candy, and put them in, beaten to Powder, then add as much Vinegar as will make a hard Curd come on the top: then the curd being taken off, waſh the place with what remains; and then the hair being clipped away, anoint the place with Hog's Lard, and the Powder of Turmerick, or you may do it with the Oyntment of Tobacco, or Honey, Verdegreaſe and Red-wine, made up into an Oyntment. And this likewiſe is good for a gall'd back, or a gall in any part of the Horſe's body.

A Horſe that is Gravelled, how to Remedy.

When by the Horſes crimpling and lameneſs you perceive he is gravelled by travelling in foul ways, take off his ſhooes and ſearch well his feet, clearing away all the Stones or Sand you can find there : Then to reſtore him,

Take Bees-wax an ounce, Deers-ſuet, Roſin and Boar's-greaſe of each an ounce, and four ounces of the Juyce of Houſleek ; make them into an Oyntment, and apply it hot on a wad of Flax ſtopping it in.

Of Cataplasms or Poultises.

NOtwithstanding what has been mentioned, there are divers Cataplasms or Poultises of singular use, and as the best of this kind, Take the subsequent.

For any Swelling, Apostbume, Rankling, Wound or broken Bone, a Cataplasm or Poultis.

Take of new Milk one pint, crumble into it white bread, and boil it till it becomes thick; add then the White of an Egg, and an ounce of Olive oyl; mingle them well together, and apply them poultis-wise to the place grieved as hot as conveniently may be endured.

For a Swelling in the Throat or under the Ears.

Take Neetsfoot-oyl a pint, of the leaves of Marigolds a handfull, Saffron a dram, and of white Bread four ounces; boil them together till they become the thickness of a Poultis, and apply them hot to the place grieved.

To draw or break a Boil or Ulcerous Sore, &c.

Take the flowers of Lady-cups, the Roots of Cuckow-pintle, the leaves of Burdock, and the flowers or roots of Water-lillies, of each half a handfull: boil them in a quart of Linseed-oyl, and Mash them into a smallness: which done, apply them Plaister or Poultis-wise, binding them hot to the place grieved as conveniency directs.

An excellent Poultis to assuage any Pain or superate Tumour.

Take the leaves of Mallows half a handfull, of Groundsel one handful; boil them in Running-water till they may be made into a Mash, then add to them a pint of Cream and two ounces of crumbled Wheaten-bread, of Mutton-suet half a pound, Oyl of Roses two ounces and the Whites of two Eggs; boil them all till they become the thickness of a Poultis and in that manner apply it to the place grieved, renewing it as you see occasion.

A Poultis to break any Infectious Sore.

Take of Lilly-roots two ounces, Marshmallows and Violet-roots, of each the like quantity; Rye-meal and Linseed oyl of each four ounces; of Barley and Wheat-meal, each an ounce; to these add two blew Figs; of the flowers of Cammomoil half an ounce; and the bark of Elder-roots the like quantity; boil them stamped and well bruised till they may be strained into a pulp; then add again Barrows-grease and Oyl of Almonds, of each two ounces, and apply it to the place till you perceive it drawn to a head; after which you may Lance it, and with a Plaister of *Diaculum* draw out the Infectious matter, and heal the grieved part.

To disperse the Flux or Oppression of Blood in any part.

Take Frankincense, Alloes, Dragon's blood and Bole-armorick, of each half an ounce, the Whites of two Eggs, and the Wool of an old Hare; mingle them well in a pint of *Aquavitæ* and let them boil till they come to a thickness; then Plaister-wise apply them to the place grieved as hot as may be endured.

For an Impostbume or sudden Swelling in any part of the Body.

Take French Barley a pound, bruise it with the like quantity of Linseed, shread them to a handfull of Marshmallows, and seeth them together in a quart of new Milk till they come to a solid thickness; then, as hot as may be endured apply them to the Swelling, and so continue to do for four or five days successively.

In case of the Palsey in the Head (a disease seldom happening in Horses) apply this Poultis, viz.

Take a large Onion, roast it well, then put to it an ounce of the oyl of Spike Olive-Oyl and Lavender flowers of each two ounces; Majorum and Winter-savory, of each half a handfull, well shread; boil these, and apply them as a Poultis, hot as may be well endured. And thus much, in brief, of things in this kind.

AS for Balms and Balſoms, ſeeing they are wonderfull uſefull on ſundry occaſions, I think it not amiſs to ſpeak ſomething more of them and their uſe by way of Receipt. And firſt,

To heal and contract any Wound.

Take of Mummy three ounces, Alloes Epatick half the quantity, Stone-pitch two ounces, Sarcol half an ounce, Gum-araback and Maſtick, of each a quarter of an ounce; add to theſe half a pint of *Aqua vitæ*; melt and order them over a gentle fire till they become a Balm; and then, as occaſion ſerves, dipping a Lineament in the contracted Medicament, apply it to the Wound as often as is convenient.

An inward Balm to deſtroy Worms, and heal Internal Bruiſes.

Take Oyl of Turpentine half a pound, Myrrh, Storax and *Galbanum*, of each an ounce; Cloves and Cinamon in Powder, of each half an ounce; Deer's-ſuet half a pound, and of Amber-greaſe a dram; make them into a Balm over a gentle fire, and give the Horſe in in warm Ale the quantity of a Walnut faſting.

An excellent Balm in caſe of any Sprain, Internal Bruiſe, Swelling, Blaſting, old Sore or Gun-ſhot.

Take of Turpentine an ounce, *Galbanum* two ounces, Cicatrine, Maſtick, Cloves, Galingal, Cinamon, Nutmegs, Cubebs, of each an ounce; Gum of Jope half an ounce; beat them and well incorporate them, then diſtill them over a gentle fire in a Glaſs; and when the thinneſt part is drawn off, the next will be a Red Oyl, and that is it which is to be applied with the greateſt ſucceſs, though the firſt is wonderfull efficacious and uſefull on many occaſions.

An excellent Balm to be given a Horſe inward, in caſe of a Conſumption.

Take of the beſt Turpentine a pound, Pine-Roſin a fourth part, Myrrh, Frankincenſe and Maſtick, of each two ounces; Sarcocol, Mace, Wood of Alloes, of each an ounce, and of Saffron half an ounce: put them in a Glaſs, retort in hot Embers; and after the Water,

or

or the clearer part is drawn off, there will come forth a reddiſh Oyl, which may be given him four drams in a morning faſting, ſuffering him to take it in half a pint of warm Ale.

An excellent Red Water to cure Ulcers.

Make a Lye of Aſhwood-aſhes, that a gallon of the liquid part may be drawn from it; and add to it a gallon of Tanners Ouſey, in which no Leather has been ſteeped; ſteep in theſe two pounds of Madder, and diſſolve half a pound of Roach-Allom, then let them ſimper over a ſoft fire till a third part be conſumed; after which run it through a fine Sieve, and duſt into it Bole-armorick: which done, ſet it again over the fire till it become to half the quantity: and ſo as you ſee occaſion, you may waſh the place grieved with it.

An excellent Water to allay any Internal heat or feaveriſh Indiſpondency.

Take of Savory, Sorrel, Bugloſs, Burrage and Endive, of each a handful: chop them ſmall, and boil them in two quarts of Running-water, ſcumming it till half be conſumed, and add as much Verjuyce as will make it up the firſt quantity: ſweeten the Liquid part with brown Sugar, and reſerve it for your uſe, giving the Horſe half a pint at a time faſting.

In caſe a Horſe be troubled with the Stone, an excellent Water.

Take two quarts of new Milk, and of Saxafrage, Parſley, Mint, Fennel, Pellitory of the Wall, Mother Thyme, green Sage and the Roots of Radiſhes, each an ounce: bruiſe the latter, adding two quarts of White-wine; and ſo, if your conveniency will admit, diſtill them, if not boil them, and ſtrain out the Liquid part, and give him half a pint at a time, having firſt ſcraped into it the Powder of a roaſted Nutmeg.

For any diſeaſe in the Eyes another excellent Water, &c.

Take of Maiden-hair and Ground-ivy, a handfull of each, the flowers of Arch-angel the like quantity, the powder of Alablaſter two ounces, and of the roots of

Wormwood dried and beaten into powder an ounce; diſtill or well concoct theſe; and when you have ſo done, waſh the Eye grieved by dipping a feather into the Liquid part.

An excellent Purgation for Gravel in the Bladder or Kidneys.

Of Parſley-roots take a handfull, white Saxafrage and Aſhen-keys or the bark of the Aſh-tree root, of each an ounce; of Pariſtone a herb ſo called, half a handfull; Eringo roots ſliced two ounces; boil them with half a pint of Coriander-ſeeds in a gallon and a half of new Ale, and give the Horſe a pint of the Liquid part to drink as hot as he can well endure it.

For the Ulceration of the Yard, an excellent Water.

Take Spring water a gallon, quench in it a hot Iron and Flint-ſtones very often; infuſe into it the leaves of red Roſes, or Roſe-cakes, four ounces; Pomgranet-pills, and the flowers of the ſame, each half an ounce; add of the Juyce Plantane and Houſleek, each half a pint; of Allom and white Copras each half an ounce: boil them over a gentle fire, and inject the Liquid part into the Yard with a Syringe, and it will effect in often uſing the Cure.

An excellent Powder for the Falling-ſickneſs or Falling-Evil in a Horſe, &c.

Take the roots of Elder, dry them in an Oven till they may be beaten into a Powder; add the Powder of a roaſted Nutmeg and Storax, each an ounce; the Aſhes of the Wool of a Fox, half an ounce; and of the Powder of Calamint a dram; mix theſe well, and give him half an ounce at a time in a quarter of a pint of Canary.

A Powder for the Ague, which frequently happens, eſpecially to young Horſes.

Take the Herb Mercury, Plantane-leaves, *Cardus Benedictus* and Rue, of each half a handfull: dry them that they may be beaten to Powder, and give the Horſe an ounce of it in a quart of Ale, wherein two handfulls of Centaury have been boiled, as hot as he can

can well endure it: and ſo renew the Doſe as you ſhall find occaſion.

To Purge Choler and Flegm, an excellent Remedy.

Take of Turbith an ounce, Ginger, Cinamon, Maſtick, Gallinga, and Alloes Epatick, of each half an ounce; Diagredium, Ruburb and Seney, of each a dram: dry, bruiſe and make them into a Powder, giving the Horſe the whole quantity at two Doſes in warm Ale or Milk.

An excellent Bath to allay any Swelling or ſuch-like diſorder, eſpecially diſeaſes in the Legs, occaſioned by the deſcending of evil humours, &c.

Take the roots and bark of Pomgrannet, the flowers of Comfory, and of Acrons, each a handfull; Cammomoil and Fumitory, of each a handfull; black Helebore and Hyſop the like quantity: boil them in a gallon of Water, and when a third part is conſumed, apply with a Woollen-cloth the remainder to the place grieved as hot as may be well endured.

A Bath to ſoften and mollifie the Skin.

Take the roots of Marſhmallows and white Lillies: bruiſe them with Fenegreek-ſeeds; Peletory of the Wall and Violet-leaves; the flowers of Cammomoil and Melliot, each an ounce; Neatsfoot-oyl, the Oyl of Lillies and Hog's Lard, each four ounces; add to them all a quart of Water, boil and ſtrain out the Liquid part, uſing it as hot as may be by way of Application, &c.

To ſtanch Blood in any Vein or Artery.

Take Alloes Epatick and *Olibanum*, of each half an ounce, and the Wool of an old Hare; bruiſe them with the White of an Egg, and ſpread them on Cotton-wool, binding them to the place and there ſuffering them to continue till ſuch time as you find the Blood is turned back, and the Film knit together, which will be within the ſpace of two or three days.

An excellent Medicament to provoke a Horſe to Vomit, as alſo to purge his Belly.

Take Elder-root Rind, bruiſe it ſmall, to the quantity

tity of two ounces, the like quantity of Spurge-lawrel and Turmerick: let them ſteep in a pint of White-wine a night and a day, and give the Liquid part to the Horſe very warm.

An excellent Purge, good on ſundry occaſions.

Take Senne, Coriander-ſeeds, Alloes, and the Juyce of Savin, of each an ounce; ſteep and bruiſe them in a quart of Ale, then give him the Liquid part faſting as hot as may be well endured for two mornings ſucceſſively, ordering them well to his Dreſſing and Diet, that he neither over-feed nor catch cold.

For a Joynt-ſickneſs.

Take Ant's Eggs, together with ſome of the Ants, a ſmall quantity; add the Keys of an Aſh-tree the Roots of Briony and thoſe of Burdock: boil them in Whey, and with the Liquid part anoint the Joynts as hot as may be well endured, binding up and keeping your Horſe warm, &c.

For an Internal Ulcer.

Take of Bees-wax four ounces, Turpentine the like quantity, Conſerve of Red Roſes an ounce, Deers-ſuet two ounces, Storax half an ounce, Myrrh the like quantity, and Oyl of ſweet Almonds, as much as will make them into a Balſom, and give it the Horſe an ounce at a time in a pint of warm Ale.

An excellent Electuary for a dangerous Cough or rattling Cold.

Take Germander, Horehound, Hyſop, Agremony, Bittany, Liverwort and Hart's-tongue of each a handfull, clean ſtripped and waſhed: boil them in three pints of Water till they are very ſoft, and till the Water be conſumed, that they may be maſhed into a thickneſs; then add the Powder of Licoras, Elecampane-roots and Honey, ſo much as will make it into an Electuary: and by ſo doing and giving each morning the quantity of a Walnut to your Horſe faſting, it will wonderfully help him.

Many may be further taken notice on of this kind, but theſe being the rareſt, neweſt, and the beſt Approved,

I hope

I hope the Practitioner will have ſuch ſatisfaction herein, that he will need no more.

CHAP. XXIII.

The Symptoms of Diſeaſes, Sorrances, Diſtempers, Grievances, or the like, in general and particular, how to foreſee them and prevent them; as alſo to know when they happen, &c.

HAving paſſed over all the Material Diſeaſes and Sorrances any ways incident, hurtfull or dangerous in the plaineſt, ſafeſt, and eaſieſt Method; it now remains that I ſpeak ſomething of the Symptoms of Diſeaſes and Diſtempers in general, that they may be the brieflier comprehended, and afterward give directions for making Unguents, Salves, Poultiſes, Clyſters, Suppoſitories, Purging-potions, &c. which ought always to be kept in a readineſs for ſundry uſes and emergent occaſions, with ſuch reaſonable directions as may add to what has been already treated of: And of theſe in their order.

The Curious, as I have formerly hinted, have ever had a great regard to the Complexion of a Horſe, thereby to draw from thence more than bare conjectures of the bodily ſtate or conſtitutions relating to health or ſickneſs. And ſince too much of this kind cannot be well laid down, nor more than ſufficiently handled, I ſhall make theſe further Obſervations than what hitherto I have made.

The Strangles are ſignified by the hanging out and unſeemly colour of a Horſe's Tongue, and by the faintneſs of his breathing.

When a Horſe is very thirſty, and ſeems very little affected towards his Provender, then has he the ſymptoms of a Fever, or ſome hot Diſeaſe that afflicts the Heart

Heart and Liver, or elſe it may ſignifie the Putrefaction of the Lungs: but when he eats largely, and deſires not much water, it denotes a cold Liver, and that the Horſe is ſubject to groſs humours, by reaſon the heat cannot concoct the quantity of nutriment as it ought; and therefore it is not amiſs to reſtrain him from eating altogether ſo much as he requires, or at leaſt to give it him by degrees, that it may leaſurely digeſt.

If with exceeding greedineſs he devour his Meat and Drink, then beware he be not troubled with the diſeaſes of the Spleen, or putrefaction of the Lungs.

If the Breath of a Horſe, without travelling or other force or violence, be found very hot, or ſo much as is more than uſual, it denotes the ſymptom of ſome feveriſh diſeaſe approaching.

If the left ſide be much ſwelled, and there be no apparent cauſe, then proceeds it from the diſorder of the Spleen; And if the Legs on that ſide be likewiſe ſwelled, then it commonly proceeds to the Dropſie.

Drivelling or noiſome water deſcending or iſſuing from the Mouth or Noſtrils of a Horſe, denotes the wet Cough; and if it be gellied, or the like, then it threatens him with the Staggers.

The dullneſs of the Countenance, lolling of the Ears and Hanging of the Head, are ſigns of the Megrim, or extraordinary pains in the Head.

If diſorderly pantings appear on the Breaſt, Sides, or any part of the Body, then does the Horſe labour under ſome ſickneſs that afflicts the Heart or Liver.

If the Mouth be ſoul and furred, and the Tongue look yelloviſh, then the Lungs are defective, and tending to a Conſumption.

The hollowneſs of the Temples denotes either the Strangles, or that the Horſe is very old.

Shortneſs of Breath, hanging of the Eye-lids, and beating of the Flanks denote a Fever.

A cold ſwelling under the Throat, with a rattling in the Head, ſignifie the approaching of the Glanders: If

about

about the Tongue-roots ſmall knobs appear, then it ſignifies Cold, &c.

If the Horſe offer to cough, and be faint in ſo doing as not throughly able to bring up what he offers at, then is it occaſioned by the ſwelling or riſing of the Lungs or oppreſſive Flegm ſettled there, which obſtructs the Lungs in the performance of their office.

The ſtairing up of the hair, and hardneſs of the skin, with dejected looks, and lankneſs of the belly, denote the Horſe foundered in the body, and ſometimes the Wind Colick, or Stone is ſignified thereby; as alſo the Yellows; which are all dangerous diſtempers in a Horſe.

If the skin ſtick to the Ribs, ſo that it cannot be well raiſed, then the Horſe is troubled with that infirmity which we commonly call Hidebound.

An uneven ſtiffneſs in going, denotes ſome Strain, Wrench, cold Swelling in the Joynts, or foundering in the feet, &c.

If a Horſe have a ſpongy Wart full of blood, it is an Amsury; If a knotty Ulcer creeping along the Vein, it is a Farcy; If Scabby or Ulcerous on the body, and about the neck, it proceeds from the Mangy; If it ſingly ſpread abroad, and that but in one place, then is it held to be the Canker.

The Botts, or ſuch-like Inſects in the paunch or belly of a Horſe, you ſhall know by the Horſe's endeavouring to ſtrike thereat with his feet, his lying down and wallowing himſelf, and his often turning his head back and looking upon his ſides.

If the Horſe be over-covetous to lye down on the right ſide, it ſignifies corrupted Blood ſetled in the Cavas of the Liver, and occaſions extraordinary heat, which by the preſſure of the Liver is augmented.

A Horſe's ſpreading, when laid down, generally denotes the approach of the Dropſie, and his often groaning, the Colick, or the Heart's being oppreſſed with bad blood: And thus of other ſigns and ſymptoms, moſt, or the moſt part whereof, I have in this Chapter;

Chapter; and what has been before-mentioned, is effectually discussed according to the best Experimental observances that have been made. From whence I shall proceed to give Directions for sundry choice Oyntments and Salves, highly necessary to be kept in store, and used on sundry occasions, as necessity requires; and other matters altogether as Material.

CHAP. XXIV.

Directions for making and preparing Oyntments, Oyls, Salves, Waters, Purgations, Poultises, Charges, Supplements, Pills, Powders, &c. *singular good in case of any Distemper or Sorrance: Many of them never before made publick.*

ALthough I have mentioned many famous Oyntments and Salves in the course of the Cures, yet some there are which may indifferently serve for most Sorrances and Griefs of any kind; and these I shall chiefly name, and direct how to make them, because they may be gotten in a readiness, and thereby the Party not be to seek them, nor his Ingredients, when the urgency of the Horse's distemper or grief requires the Application.

An Oyntment to search any Wound or Ulcerated Sore, or any thing of the like nature.

Take of Bees-wax four ounces, Turpentine the like quantity, the Juyce of Spurge-lawrel two ounces, Deer's suet half a pint, Verdegrease an ounce, Allom calcined two ounces, and Hog's Lard as much as will make it into an Oyntment over a gentle fire. This, by often using, will not only search the Wound, and discover dead, proud, or putrefied flesh, but cleanse it, and cause it to heal, restoring the good flesh, and rendering it easie to cure.

An Oyntment excellent good in case of Botches, Boils, Scabs, or the like Sorrances.

Take the Juyce of green Tobacco half a pint, of Deer's-suet a pound, the Powder of Dandelyon-roots two ounces, as much of Soap-makers Ashes, and half a pint of the Lees of Wine: make them up into an Oyntment with half a pint of Olive-oyl, and an ounce of the Oyl of *Petrolum*.

To skin any Wound, an excellent Oyntment.

Take of Dog's-grease two ounces, half the quantity of black-Soap, of the Powder of calcined Roach-Allom two drams, the Juyce of Mugwort an ounce: make them into an Oyntment over a gentle fire; and when the Wound begins to fill with flesh, anoint it over.

To mollifie and assuage any Swelling, an excellent Oyntment.

Take of Nut-oyl a quarter of a pint, Neatsfoot-oyl half a pint, and Linseed-oyl the like quantity: add to these the Juyce of Plantane a quarter of a pint, and four ounces of the Oyl of Earthworms: boil them over a gentle fire to a convenient thickness, and apply the Oyntment to the place grieved as warm as may be well suffered, and chafe it in with your warm hand when it begins to cool.

An excellent Oyntment to cool and allay any Inflammation.

Take of the Oyl of Marshmallows half a pint, the Juyce of Mandrake-roots two ounces, Dog's fat four ounces, or instead thereof that of Hog's Lard, *Spermaceti* two ounces, and fresh Butter a quarter of a pound: make them into an Oyntment over a gentle fire, and, as occasion serves apply them to the place grieved till you find the extraordinary heat abate.

An excellent Oyntment, or rather Balsome to be inwardly given a Horse for Obstructions, Bruises, and other Ailments and Grievances.

Take of Refined and rarified Turpentine two ounces, Stag's-suet the like quantity, Amber-grease two scruples, *Olibanum* an ounce, Oyl of Roses two ounces, and

and a dram of the oyl of Amber: heat these gently till they incorporate, and then take a small quantity, and with fine flower make a Past to the bigness of a Walnut, and give it the Horse to swallow; giving him after it half a pint of warm Mallaga.

To make a green Ointment proved by Experience more effectual than what has formerly been published.

Take the Juyce of Sage two ounces, as much of that of Rue, an ounce of Verdegrease, and of *Aqua vitæ* half a quartern: mix these over a gentle fire, and add of the Powder of Elecampane-roots an ounce, with the Powder of white Copras calcined half an ounce: make them into an Ointment with Olive-oyl, and half an ounce of the Oyl of Turpentine.

An excellent Remedy for the Staggers or any pain that suddenly takes a Horse, sometimes to the loss of his life.

Take the fat of the Guts of a Capon two ounces, Oyl of sweet Almonds two ounces, of Olive-oyl half a pint: Incorporate them well over a gentle fire, then drop into them the Chymical Oyl of Nutmeg a dram, and the like quantity of that of Spikenard and Bay-berries; and having incorporated them farther into an Ointment, when you perceive your Horse afflicted, dip a feather in the Ointment, and thrust it up the nostrils of the Horse, and anoint them as high as may be; then burn under his nose Storax on a Chasing-dish of Charcole, placing a Tunnel so over it, that the Smoak may ascend into the nostrils only: This is likewise good for any cold Rheum that afflicts the head, and will bring away the superfluous humour.

An excellent Salve for any Wound.

Take Hog's Lard half a pound, Bees-wax a pound, Stone-pitch six ounces, unslacked Lime beaten into Powder an ounce, the Powder of dried Fox's Lungs an ounce; make them into a Salve with two ounces of Turpentine, and apply it Plaister-wise to any Gangrene, ulcerous Sore, Botch, Strain, Slip, Spavin, after its being opened, or other Sorrance, and by due application it will answer your expectation.

An

An approved Salve to draw any ſtub, thorn, or ſplinter of Bone or Wood out of the fleſh.

Take of Burgundia-pitch four ounces, the like quantity of Per-rolin, Nut-oyl two ounces, and the like quantity of Linſeed-oyl, and an ounce of the Juyce of Hemlock: make them into the thickneſs of a Salve and apply it Plaiſterwiſe to the grieved part till you find the head of the offenſive matter; and then with your Inſtrument dilate the fleſh, and draw it out.

To fill a Wound, Ulcer or the like, with good fleſh an excellent Plaiſter.

Take Mutton-ſuet half a pound, the Juyce of Baum a quarter of a pint, the Oyntment of Marſhmallows and Groundſel of each two ounces; burnt Allom in Powder two ounces; Roſin half a pound, and Bees-wax as much as will make it up into a Salve.

A Salve to draw Corruption from the bottom of any Wound, or to draw a Swelling, or any ſuch grievance to a head.

Take Turpentine half a pound, Linſeed oyl half a pint, Chalk beaten to Powder an ounce, the Juyce of Orpin half a quartern, *Galbanum* two ounces; and Oyl of Vitriol a dram: make them into a Salve, and apply them to the place grieved: and in ſo doiug you will find your expectation anſwered.

To ripen a Tumour or aſſwage any Swelling not abounding with extraordinary humours.

Take the fat of an Urchin or Hedge-hog four ounces, Tarr two ounces, old Cheeſe well beaten in a Mortar four ounces, the Juyce of Garlick half a quarter of a pint, Bees-wax ſix ounces, and Stone-pitch ſix ounces: make them into a Salve, and apply the Plaiſter on a peice of Sheeps-leather.

An excellent Poultis for a Tumour or Swelling.

Take Linſeed-oyl half a pint, the Whites of ſix Eggs, Bole-armoniack two ounces, Groundſel and Smallage of each a handfull well bruiſed in a Mortar, Celendine and Comfory the like quantity ſo ordered: fry them together, and lay them on as hot as may be. This either allays

allays the ſwelling, if only fleſhy, occaſioned by a ſtroke or Saddle-pinching, or brings it to a head, in caſe it proceeds from humours gathering or contracting in one place.

A Charge to eaſe a pain in the Back, or for any Sprain.

Take new Cow-dung four ounces, the roots of Burdock two ounces, waſhed and ſliced; Borage and Bugloſs, of each a handfull; Oyl of Bays ſix ounces: bruiſe them well together, and heating them over the fire, ſuffer them to be as hot as may be well endured, and apply them as a Poultis.

To mollifie any Chap or rough Sore.

Take Comfory, the Roots of Scabeous and the leaves of Plantane, boil them in Olive-oyl, being firſt well bruiſed to a ſoftneſs; then add Neatsfoot-oyl, half the quantity of the Olive-oyl; and then ſtrain off the Liquid part, and with it anoint the place grieved.

For the Eyes of a Horſe afflicted by any means, an approved Water to Cure or eaſe them.

Take of the Juyce of Pimpernel and Eyebright, of each a like quantity, both conſiſting of half a pint; add to them the Powder of *Lapis Calaminaris*, quenched in White-wine, an ounce, and as much of the Powder of burnt Allom; two drams of the Calcine of Crabs-eyes, and as much of the powder'd pith of Oyſters: dip a feather in them, well mingled by ſtirring and rub it ſo dipped into the Eyes.

A Water to waſh the Mouth in caſe of any Sorrance or defect.

Take Spring-water a pottle, Roach-Allom a pound, and Engliſh Honey the like quantity: diſſolve them into the water over a gentle fire, and add half a pint of the Juyce of Hyſop, and the like quantity of that of Celendine or Vervine: boil them to the conſumption of a third part, and with the Water waſh the Horſe's mouth as you ſee occaſion.

A Pill good for any Internal diſorder, &c.

Take of Alloes Epatick half an ounce, Powder of Ruburb

Ruburb the like quantity, the Juyce of Water-creſſes half a quarter of a pint, and the Berries of Juniper dried and beaten into Powder an ounce; make theſe with the Oyl of Myrtle, into Pills as big as hazlenuts, and give him four at a time ſucceſſively in warm Ale or New Milk every morning.

A Supplement exceeding good for any ſtrain or grief in the Sinews, &c.

Take Bacon Lard half a pound, the Oyl or Oyntment of Smallage two ounces, black Snails a handfull, the Powder of Maſtick two ounces: bruiſe and incorporate them, and ſo apply them to the place grieved.

A Vomit for a Horſe that has a Queeſy ſtomach, thereby to render him a good Appetite.

Take Spurge-lawrel a handfull, Briony-root an ounce boil them in a quart or three pints of Water; then ſtrain out the Liquid part; and having ſweetned it with Sugar-candy, give it him hot, and tend him that he catch not cold.

To purge Melancholly.

Take Scamony a dram, the Juyce or Seeds of black Helebore two ounces: diſſolve the former in, and mingle the latter with a pint of warm Ale, and give it him to drink faſting.

To purge Phlegm.

Take of the Juyce of Ivy-leaves or berries, half an ounce; or the Decoction of them being very ſtrong, add the grains of Cochneal two ounces, the roots of Fern waſhed and ſliced two ounces, Colocinthius an ounce: make of theſe a drench with White-wine; give it the Horſe warm, and keep him two hours after faſting.

CHAP.

CHAP XXV.

Clysters, how to make them, and on what occasion they ought to be applied in order to their effectual working and bringing away bad humours.

SInce Clysters, in case of Internal distempers, are very necessary I cannot omit them, but proceed, amongst other things, to speak of such as cannot but be usefull, and especially those that are capable of purging the several humours, or at least-ways to cause an evacuation of those crudities they have contracted in the bowels. And in this case, if your Horse is very laxative, which frequently is occasioned by flegmatick humours,

Take of the Juyce of Peletory of the Wall a quarter of a pint, add to it Verjuyce and Olive-oyl, of each half a pint, and of stale Beer a quart: boil them together to the consumption of a sixth part, and being warm, put them into your Glister-bag, and force them up the body of the Horse, and by binding down his Tail, suffer them to remain there if possible, for the space of an hour, and give him thereupon Water wherein Scabeous has been concocted.

In case of any Pestilential disease, occasioned by a cholerick or fiery humour.

Take of the seeds of *Colloquintida*, cleared from the husks, half an ounce; the Juyce of Centaury and Wormwood of each an ounce; *Castoreum* half the like quantity: juyce of Wood-sorrel two ounces, and half a pint of Olive-oyl: concoct them in two quarts of Water a little sweetned with brown Sugar, and force it into the Horse's body, using him as before is mentioned.

For any Internal distemper proceeding from Melancholly.

Take Anniseeds, and the Seeds of Mallows beaten to

to Powder, of each an ounce: boil them with a ſmall quantity of Savin in a quart of Whey or Skim-milk; then add a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter; and ſo having well ſtrained out the Liquid part, give it him in his Fundament luke-warm.

For any diſtemper Internal, occaſioned by ſanguine, corrupt Blood, or watry Humours, by means of bad concoction or obſtruction, &c.

Take of the leaves and roots of Marſhmallows a handfull, Violet leaves double the quantity, Linſeed and Coriander-ſeeds, of each a handfull, white Lilly-roots an ounce, the Juyce of Senne the like quantity with the latter; boil them in two quarts of Water to the conſumption of a third part; and then add Oyl of Olives a pint, and give it him warm Clyſter-wiſe.

For Sickneſs in general an approved Clyſter.

Take of the Oyl of Dill and Cammomoil, of each an ounce, the Oyl of Caſſa half an ounce, the Juyce of Violet leaves two ounces: Then having concocted a good quantity of Mallows in two quarts of Water, ſtrain out the Liquid part, and put the fore-mentioned Ingredients therein, and adminiſter them blood-warm: This in all violent diſeaſes eſpecially, is ſingular good.

In caſe of Reſtringency or hard Binding.

Take the Juyce of Fumitory a quarter of a pint, the Syrup of Roſes two ounces, and as much of the Oyl of Bays; Neatsfoot oyl half a pint, and of the Juyce of Mulberries two ounces; add to theſe a pint of new Milk, and force them up the Horſe's Fundament very warm; and ſo upon other the like occaſions.

Obſerve in giving of Clyſters, that the quantity muſt in all probability be reduced or augmented according to the quality or temperature of the Horſe. Now note, that if the Horſe be never ſo large, and in good caſe, three quarts is an extraordinary doſe, and one quart an indifferent one; ſo that I leave it to the diſcretion of the Practitioner to regulate the Liquid part as he ſees convenient, leaſt by over-cha-

CHAP XXV.

Clyſters, how to make them, and on what occaſion they ought to be applied in order to their effectual working and bringing away bad humours.

SInce Clyſters, in caſe of Internal diſtempers, are very neceſſary I cannot omit them, but proceed, amongſt other things, to ſpeak of ſuch as cannot but be uſefull, and eſpecially thoſe that are capable of purging the ſeveral humours, or at leaſt-ways to cauſe an evacuation of thoſe crudities they have contracted in the bowels. And in this caſe, if your Horſe is very laxative, which frequently is occaſioned by flegmatick humours,

Take of the Juyce of Peletory of the Wall a quarter of a pint, add to it Verjuyce and Olive-oyl, of each half a pint, and of ſtale Beer a quart: boil them together to the conſumption of a ſixth part, and being warm, put them into your Gliſter-bag, and force them up the body of the Horſe, and by binding down his Tail, ſuffer them to remain there if poſſible, for the ſpace of an hour, and give him thereupon Water wherein Scabeous has been concocted.

In caſe of any Peſtilential diſeaſe, occaſioned by a cholerick or fiery humour.

Take of the ſeeds of *Colloquintida*, cleared from the huſks, half an ounce; the Juyce of Centaury and Wormwood of each an ounce; *Caſtoreum* half the like quantity: juyce of Wood-ſorrel two ounces, and half a pint of Olive-oyl: concoct them in two quarts of Water a little ſweetned with brown Sugar, and force it into the Horſe's body, uſing him as before is mentioned.

For any Internal diſtemper proceeding from Melancholly.

Take Anniſeeds, and the Seeds of Mallows beaten to

to Powder, of each an ounce: boil them with a ſmall quantity of Savin in a quart of Whey or Skim-milk; then add a quarter of a pound of freſh Butter; and ſo having well ſtrained out the Liquid part, give it him in his Fundament luke-warm.

For any diſtemper Internal, occaſioned by ſanguine, corrupt Blood, or watry Humours, by means of bad concoction or obſtruction, &c.

Take of the leaves and roots of Marſhmallows a handfull, Violet leaves double the quantity, Linſeed and Coriander-ſeeds, of each a handfull, white Lilly-roots an ounce, the Juyce of Senne the like quantity with the latter; boil them in two quarts of Water to the conſumption of a third part; and then add Oyl of Olives a pint, and give it him warm Clyſter-wiſe.

For Sickneſs in general an approved Clyſter.

Take of the Oyl of Dill and Cammomoil, of each an ounce, the Oyl of Caſſa half an ounce, the Juyce of Violet leaves two ounces: Then having concocted a good quantity of Mallows in two quarts of Water, ſtrain out the Liquid part, and put the fore-mentioned Ingredients therein, and adminiſter them blood-warm: This in all violent diſeaſes eſpecially, is ſingular good.

In caſe of Reſtringency or hard Binding.

Take the Juyce of Fumitory a quarter of a pint, the Syrup of Roſes two ounces, and as much of the Oyl of Bays; Neatsfoot oyl half a pint, and of the Juyce of Mulberries two ounces; add to theſe a pint of new Milk, and force them up the Horſe's Fundament very warm; and ſo upon other the like occaſions.

Obſerve in giving of Clyſters, that the quantity muſt in all probability be reduced or augmented according to the quality or temperature of the Horſe. Now note, that if the Horſe be never ſo large, and in good caſe, three quarts is an extraordinary doſe, and one quart an indifferent one; ſo that I leave it to the diſcretion of the Practitioner to regulate the Liquid part as he ſees convenient, leaſt by over-charging

ging the Horse's bowels, it burst forth before it has opportunity to work as it ought, as by being undercharged it wants of its force to stir the humours, and cause such an evacuation as is required. And so submitting this to the discretion or judgement of those that shall make experiment, I proceed to other matters altogether as necessary to be understood, both as to what relates to the preservation of health, and remedy of sickness.

CHAP. XXVI.

Cordials, Cordial-Powders, Drinks and Drenches, Purgations and Suppositories, wonderfully conducing to the health and strength of a Horse.

Diapente, *an excellent Powder in case of any cold or Pestilential disease. To make it,*

TAke *Gentia Baccalani*, Round *Aristolochia*, Myrrh, and the Powder of Storax, of each an ounce: bruise them distinctly, and pass the Powder through a fine Sieve; and when you see occasion, give the Horse from two to four drams in Muscadel, or other sweet Wine, as warm as may be, and keep him from catching cold: or for want of Wine, give it him in strong Ale, but Wine is better.

An excellent Cordial-Ball to be given in case of any Internal distemper, and especially to prevent the Consumption or wasting any part, &c.

Take dried Fox's Lungs an ounce, Methridate two ounces, Powder of Licoris and that of the Seeds of Coriander, of each an ounce; the Powder of Cinamon and Pomgrannet-seeds, of each an ounce; Spruce-beer, or the Lees of Claret half a pint: Thicken it with

with Allom flower till the whole maſs be infuſed therein, and may be made up into balls as big as Walnuts; and then give him one at a time, as you ſee occaſion, ſending after it a hot Drench of Ale or new Milk: This and the former being put into a glaſs or gally-pot, and cloſe ſtopped up, will keep in a dry place a Twelvemonth.

An excellent Drench to cure any Internal diſtemper proceeding from any of the four Humours of the Body, &c. *eſpecially ſuch as are Peſtilential.*

Having let your Horſe blood, if neceſſity, by the Symptoms I have named in the foregoing part of the book, requires it,

Take a handfull of Baum, and as much Wormwood; dry them till they may be rubbed into a Powder; mix with the Powder the Juyce of Rue four ounces, the Powder of grated Nutmeg, well dried, an ounce, four grains of the Oyl of Amber, and two of Bezora-ſtone; diſſolve theſe in a quart of Ale, and give the Drench to the Horſe as hot as is convenient; and let him ſtand faſting two hours in a dry Stable after them.

For want of what is before mentioned, Take Anniſeed, and the Seeds of Cardamums, of each an ounce; Bay-berries and Fenegreek-ſeed the like quantity, the ſifted Powder of the roots of Elecampane two ounces, Olive-oyl half a pint, and a pint of new Milk: mix them well together, and ſweeten the Liquid part, whilſt it is ſeething over the fire, with white Sugar, and give it him as warm as is convenient, ordering him as before.

Suppoſitories, and their uſe.

This word ſpeaks the intention of the thing, which is no other than a preparing before-hand the Horſe's body to receive a Purge or Clyſter. Now for the former,

Take Water wherein Wood-ſorrel and Maiden-hair, Herb ſo called, has been boiled, and give it him to

drink with his Provender a day before; or Water wherein Deal Saw-duſt has been boiled, or ſteeped: the like you may do with the Leaves of Bays or Holley, or any thing that may either open the Veins, or fix the humour, ſo that it may be in a readineſs for the purgation to work on.

The other is to be put up into the Horſe's Fundament, after he is well raked to prepare him for a Clyſter; as a large Candle, a roaſted Onion, Garlick and Rue, bruiſed and made up into a Ball with white Flower, or a Waſh-ball; and theſe muſt be ſuted according to the humour predominant. And in this caſe, ſome hold what I ſhall name to be authentick.

Take, ſay they, for Choler, bruiſed Staveacre and Savin, made into a Ball as big as a Tennis-ball, with Honey and Bean-flower: If for Fiegm, Caſtle-ſoap a piece as big as a two penny Waſh-ball, rowled in Powder of Ginger: If for Melancholly a red Onion roaſted and ſtuck with Cloves: And laſtly, for Sanguine, or over-flowing of bad humours, proceeding from the naughtineſs of the blood, make a Suppoſitory of Honey, Bole-armorick, ſweet Butter and bruiſed Spermint: make them up (with Oat-meal ſmall, ground and ſifted) into a paſte: And to keep any of theſe in, which muſt be done for the ſpace of an hour, you muſt bind down the Tail, and gently Trot your Horſe; and when you perceive him ſweat, bring him into the Stable; and drawing forth what remains undiſſolved in his Fundament, give him the Clyſter you have prepared, and expect the ſucceſs.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

Perfumes, Baths and Purgations, what they are, and to what end they ſerve; with the manner how, and under what conſiderations they ought to be applied.

PErfumes are much available to remove bad ſcents, or noiſome vapours from the head or ſtomach of a Horſe; and being moderately and ſeaſonably applied, greatly contribute to his health: And in this caſe if the Horſe be afflicted with cold diſeaſes, or thoſe that proceed from cold raw humours,

Take Storax and Benjamine of each half an ounce; *Olibanum* and Frankincenſe of each a quarter of an ounce; Oyl of *Petrolum* an ounce bruiſe the Drugs, and make them up in ſmall Balls as big as a pea; burn them upon a Chafing-diſh of Coles, ſo that the ſmoak may affect the mouth and noſtrils of the Horſe, and that he may draw it in with his breath, and to make him the better ſo to do, put a gag in his mouth that it may ſtand open.

If the Horſe be troubled with giddineſs in his head, which is known by the dullneſs of the Eyes, burn Feathers under his noſe, ſhavings of Leather or Camel's Hair, or the Seeds of Fennel and Anniſeeds. The Roots of Horſe-radiſh or Ruburb will have the ſame effect, or any thing of ſtrong ſcent, whether Gums, Oyls, Roots, Herbs, or other things of the like nature and quality.

In caſe of Bathing a Horſe, commonly called the Horſe-Bathe, it is no more than the concocting divers Herbs that are cooling and ſupple; and with the Liquid part waſh and ſupple the place grieved, to ren-

der a limberneſs of the Joynts or remove dirt, or any the like diſorder or grievance, and may many times upon a Journey be uſed with ſucceſs to reſtore or refreſh a tired Horſe, being applied warm to his Limbs: And the beſt of this kind take as followeth:

Take Sorrel, Mallows, Groundſel, Cammomoil, Sperage, Sow-thiſtle, Comfory and Scabeous, Endive, Bugloſs and Feather-few: boil them in two gallons of Running-water and when you find they are ſufficiently ſeethed, ſtrain out the Liquid part: or if you find your Horſe much given to coldneſs, you may boil them in Chamber-lye.

Directions for Purging, according to the eſtate and condition of your Horſe.

If you perceive your Horſe of a ſtrong conſtitution, not impaired by diſeaſe or want, then may you give him ſtrong provocatives, that by a conquering quality may prevail againſt the diſtemper; but if he be weak and infeebled, then nature being unable to keep her ſtation, and the potion being ſtrong, great injury may happen, by reaſon of the fixation or ſettlement of the groſs humours and crudities: Wherefore the ſuddain and violent operation not being capable of removing them, will prey upon, and evacuate thoſe good humours that ſhould ſtrengthen and ſupport the body: And therefore in caſe of weakneſs, a weaker potion muſt be given, that by long continuance and eaſie working, it may by degrees looſen and attract what is offenſive. And now for a gentle Purge:

Take two ounces of Turnſole, and half an ounce of the Powder of Alloes; diſſolve them in a quart of Ale, wherein half a dozen Lawrel-leaves have been concocted: give it him warm, and attend the working of it; giving him, the better to hearten him, a Toaſt dipped in Canary, about half an hour after; but if the Horſe be ſo ſtrong, that he will diſpence with a violent Purge; then,

Take

Take of *Colloquintida* three ounces, Ruburb in Powder an ounce, Scamony two grains: diſſolve them in half a pint of the Juyce of Hyſop, and the like quantity of Canary: give them the Horſe very warm, and keep him ſtirring in a warm Stable two hours, at leaſt without giving him any thing; and when by a conquering quality they prevail over the diſtemper, give him a warm maſh, but no hard meat till ſix hours after, by which time it will have done working; and in caſe of cold diſtempers you may ſomewhat augment the Doſe. And now as to the Humours, if we take them diſtinctly, Alloes and Caſſa purge Melancholly; *Colloquintida* Flegm, Ruburb Sanguine; and Scamony Choler. Nor are theſe the only things that do it, but there are divers others; yet ſeeing I have largely directed on that occaſion, I ſhall wave them in this Chapter.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Coſticks, Corroſives, and Rawelling; what they are; for what cauſe, and in what manner to be applied.

AS for Coſticks and Corroſives, they are potable Cauterizings or Burnings, with Oyl, Water or Mineral, Chymically prepared, and ſometimes contracted by making a Wound, or breaking the Skin, with Roots and Herbs participating of a fiery nature, and theſe are uſed in eating away dead fleſh, boney or ſpongy Excreſſences; and in caſe of the Farcy, Mangy, Ring-worm, or the like loathſome dangerous diſtempers: And the chief theſe are.

Aqua-fortis, *Aqua-regis*, Vitriol, Oyl of Tartar, Quick-lime Oyl of Spike, Arſnick, or *Reſalgar*, *Ægyptiacum*, *Crocus-martis*, Mercury Sublimate, Copras, Verdegreaſe, Allom, Recordal; and of roots and flowers:

Burdock roots, Horſe-radiſh roots, the roots of white Lillies, Garlick, Onions, Cuccow-pintle, Featherfew, Briony; the leaves of Coleworts, Celendine, the great Southernwood, Butter-flowers, Ground-ivy; the flowers of Mare-blabs, Senna, Saxafrage water, Lillies, Hollyhawks, Scabeous, Rue, Baresfoot or Hellebore, *&c.* The Application of which I leave to the diſcretion of the Practitioner, to make it as he ſees convenient, or conſiſtent with the nature of the diſtemper: And ſo proceed to ſpeak ſomething of Rowelling, another neceſſary thing to be known.

Rowelling; what it is, and how to be performed.

Rowelling is no other than making an Inciſion in the fleſh, or rather skin, by taking it up with a bodkin or other inſtrument, ſo that a ring of hair, cord or leather may be faſtned in it; anoint it with greaſe, oyl, or other things thereby to keep the Skin from cloſing upon it, that in the nature of an Iſſue the corrupt humour may be voided: And this is commonly fixed in the Breaſt or Shoulder of a Horſe, for a ſtrain, ſlip or ſwelling. And for your better inſtruction, obſerve as thus:

Take a Pen-knife, or other ſharp knife, and ſlit the skin right down for the length of an Inch, or more, gently raiſing it with a flat ſtick; and ſo do on the other ſide, about half a fingers breadth diſtant; ſo that the skin being parted from the fleſh, you may run your finger quite through, and ſo put your Rowel in well anointed, and turn it about every other day, freſhly anointing it. And though this be the general way of Rowelling, yet the *French* make a ſlit or hole only, and hollow the skin from the fleſh, in circle like a Crown piece; and then cutting a piece of

ſtiff

ſtiff unallom'd Leather to the bigneſs, with one indifferent big hole in the middle, and four ſmaller ones, as the Figure in the Margent; then anoint it with Lard or Oyl of Marſhmallows, and put it in ſo that the Orifice may be left open for the corruption to iſſue out through a ſhort quill which they faſten therein; running likewiſe a Needle and Thread through the four ſmall holes to prevent its turning about, or wearing downwards; and ſo by raiſing up the Skin, and blowing the wind into the ſpongy fleſh, cauſe the putrefaction to gather and deſcend, that ſo by the evacuation of the humours the grievance may find a cure; and that it may lye the cloſer, draw two ſtrong ſtitches overthwart, as you perceive in the ſecond Figure, and let it continue till you perceive the humours well evacuated; and then cutting the ſtitches, take it out. And thus have I diſcuſſed the Material things relating to this Science. From whence I proceed to other things highly neceſſary to be known, as in the Second Part of this Book your diſcretion may direct you, &c.

The Compleat MANAGERS.

The Compleat FARRIER.

THE SECOND PART.

Containing many rare Experiments relating to *Horſes* and *Horſemanſhip*, &c. in ſuch exactneſs and variety as has not hitherto been made publick to the World.

The Manner of Breaking a Horſe the beſt way and perfecting him in his Paces, &c. *and preſerving him from danger*, &c.

HAving thus far advanced in this great undertaking, as I well hope with ſucceſs; I now think it highly neceſſary, for the better encouragement of the Reader, to add ſuch rare Secrets, and other Matters, as I doubt not but will confirm him in the ſincere endeavour of uſe to render him in the practice both Profit and Pleaſure.

Having Back'd your Horſe in the latter end of the fourth, or beginning of the fifth year, and by gentle means rendred him eaſie and complyable, which by rating,

rating, beating, and haring, cannot be ſo well brought to perfection, as by cheriſhing and encouraging him; though ſometimes it muſt be with gentle correction, that he may be the better brought to underſtand himſelf. Then the next thing materially to be conſidered, is to what uſe you deſign him, that to the ſame end you may reduce him to Pace, Amble, Trot, Gallop, or the like, as either of them may beſt concur to his advantage. Wherefore, that none might plead ignorance herein, I ſhall treat of them in their order briefly and effectually.

When you mount a Horſe with the intention before-mentioned, you muſt, if he be an unmanaged Horſe, obſerve chiefly the correction or encouragement of the Voice, Bridle, Switch, Spur, Calves of the Legs, Stirrops and the Ground; all of theſe being properly uſed in the true Management of a Horſe; but being to be obſerved, as the diſcreet Rider ſhall ſee occaſion for the beſt advantage, it would be impoſſible for me to ſet down directions of this kind; though in general I muſt ſay, that they muſt be done with diſcretion, and in ſeaſon; or elſe inſtead of redounding to the facilitating of Management they may turn much to its diſadvantage in rendring the Horſe reſtiff, or hardning him in the Vice of going backward. And now as the true Amble is the juſteſt meaſure a Horſe can take to ground him in, and render him ſenſible of all other motions, I proceed in the firſt place to give directions how, and by what means he muſt be brought to undertake it with eaſe and cheerfulneſs, for if the contrary happen, he will hardly be brought to the perfection you wiſh.

Obſerve when your Horſe is well broke, that he will patiently endure the Bitt and the Rider; that you take him into Plough'd land, not too deep nor cloggy, by reaſon of Clay or lying low; nor muſt it be done in wet weather, nor ſuddenly after a ſhowre; and there Rack him a good going pace, till he begins to be

be a little warm, and feels his Legs well: And ſo do often morning and evening, ſtraining and forcing him ever now and then beyond that pace, when as you will in a ſhort time perceive him to fall into a kind of an Amble, but ſo ſhuffling, that it is not fit for him long to continue it in this manner, leaſt by cuſtome it becomes habitual; though in ancient times this was the way both held and practiced, whereby the Horſes were brought to the motion of Ambling: But ſince time and experience has furniſhed us with better, it would be ingratitude not to embrace them; and therefore, for brevity ſake, paſſing over the various diſcourſes and opinions of ſome that hold it beſt for a Horſe to fall out of a Gallop into an Amble, of others that would oblige him to it by Loading him with exceſſive weights; and ſome again, and thoſe not a few, that would have him brought to it by hand between two Rails; others there are, and they more erronious than any I have named, who would have the Horſe loaded with ſhooes of extraordinary weight to force him thereto, which by often uſing he muſt conſequently be diſabled to perform any motion as he ought: And indeed opinions in this caſe are ſo many and various, that it would be endleſs in a manner to trace them; many of which, though gilded with ſeeming poſſibility, I willingly omit, and proceed to that which my Experience tells me cannot fail, if rightly managed. Directions in performance of which, take as followeth:

Having trained your Horſe, by the help of the Ploughed Land, or other gentle means, upon a conſiderable Rack-pace, to fall into an Amble, though he preſently leave it again, and fall to any other motion: Then take ſtrong new Lines made of Hemp or Flax, about the thickneſs of a Jack-line, well ſhrunk and dried that they may neither reach nor ſhrink in uſing; let them have Nooſes wrought in them at either end of theſe Lines; there muſt be two in number of ſo even a length,

length, that the leaſt diſproportion imaginable muſt not be found in them, their lengths not by any means exceeding thirty ſeven Inches, or being under thirty five; This done, make a ſoft pare of Hoſe or Shackles of Girthweb, lined for that purpoſe, with Wool, Cotton, or ſoft Linnen; faſten them about the Fetlock-places of the fore and hinder Legs, or places in which Horſes are croſs-barred to prevent their leaping, and faſten them by Aglet-holes with Leather Tabs of equal length, and let the end of a Tab ſo faſtned come from them about the length of eight or nine Inches, punched full of holes, to receive the Tongue of a Buckle fit for each of them; then having buckled on your Cords even on both ſides, to the diſtance, or, as I may term it, the Reach of the Horſe, when he ſtands even with his feet, and proportionably upright, that by no means they may ſlip or reach. Then take Girthweb, as much as will reach over his Back, and come down to reach the cords, on both ſides, exactly in the middle, wrap it round the cords, but ſo as it may not ſtrain or lift them up, nor ſuffer them to ſink lower than their juſt evenneſs; and then faſten them either by running a Tag through Aglet-holes made for the ſame purpoſe, or by Pack-thread with a Pack-needle; and this called a Tramel; being one of the beſt and exacteſt for this purpoſe that can be made.

Your Horſe being accouter'd in the manner before mentioned, on a plain firm ground, not over-ſtony, move him at firſt gently, that he may have an opportunity to feel the Tramel, the better to avoid twitching; and ſo by degrees let him fall into his Amble by moderately managing the Bridle, and holding your Switch between his Ears that he wreth nor wry not his Neck, cheriſhing him with your Voice and giving him, when he has done well, ſome pleaſant morſel; but by no means put him to it beyond his ability, leaſt it become tedious to him, and create in him an irkſomeneſs and diſlike; and in ſo uſing him ſeveral days

days, that is, every other day in the week; if your Horse be sure and good footed, he will take pleasure in it, and perform it without your forcing him to it. But by the way observe, that if your Horse be of a long reach, and when he first undertakes it is consequently subject to twitches, then you may, without offenee, when he is first put to it, give him a little more liberty, least you subject him to those twitches by sometimes forgetting himself when the Tramel is off, which by the Ignorant, will be taken for the String-halt; but being well used and brought to the feeling of them, you must come to a perfect length, least having more liberty at one time than at another, he proves a shuffler, or varies in his Amble.

Having brought your Horse pretty well to Amble by the Tramel, insomuch that he does it not confusedly, or against his will, either by hand or backing, you may take him into uneven ground, and try him in such ways as you imagine you may have occasion to Ride him in, never standing to pick or chuse your ground, but ride him as far as is safe, according as your fancy leads you, yet not without the Tramel fixed on one side, which you may shift as you see occasion; and when you find him perfect, you may Ride him without, only carry the Tramel with you, in case he make a default; the best way is to bring him back to that default, and make him sensible that he has committed an error, which can be no better done than by demonstration; and in so often using him, the time will come, and that within three months at farthest, that he will be perfect in his exercise.

There is to be considered next to what has been spoken, the Trot; and that consists in two parts, *viz.* the lofty and swift Trot; and although to the latter a good Amble is naturally given, yet the former requires deliberation and judgment. And since Experience has afforded a Rule, I think not convenient to

conceal

conceal it: which, as the best Experiment, I deliver as followeth.

In this case a Horse used to the great Saddle, is the fittingest to be undertaken, or one you design for that or the like purpose. Wherefore having chosen your Horse, fasten on him the War Saddle, girting it indifferently strait; then put on a Curb-bridle and fastning to the Chain thereof a Leather strap, bring it by a Buckle to bear on the Breast-plate or Girths under the Horse's Legs, or which of them you shall perceive most convenient, till you bring the Neck of the Horse to bend or bear Ach-wise like the neck of a Swan: which done, mount your Horse, and move him a Racking-pace till you find him begin to take up his Legs round and clever, moving his Knees in a manner to his Breast, or bringing the upper and lower spaces between the Joynts to an equal bearing; and so continue to exercise him till you find him move in that manner according to your expectation: And then you may try him without the Straps, and by that means perfect him as you see occasion. Now some there are, that upon the first Backing use to log their Horses with broad and heavy Shoes: But these I disapprove, and chiefly for two Reasons:

First, Because they greatly endamage the Hoof; and not so only, but by their weight strain and disorder the Sinews, that a Horse must of necessity be obliged to take up his Legs with pain, which will afterward subject him to stiffness and stumbling.

Secondly, They will endanger the Sinews by bruising and cutting, and thereby cause the Bone-spavin, Screw-pin, Ring-bone or Quitter-bone; All which, for the most part, proceed from the like ill Management, and defect of Judgement in Managing, &c. But if you would perfect him to the great Saddle, consider farther, that it is highly necessary to manage him at the Ring, that he may be capable of stopping

ping and turning upon the leaſt motion; and this Ring muſt be upon ſoft ſandy ground, where having gently circled him till you have trod out a Ring between fifty and ſixty Paces in compaſs, oblige him to trace it, reſting him on the right, and cheriſhing him on the left; ſtopping him likewiſe upon the latter, as you ſee occaſion; ſometimes in the midſt of the circle, and at other times where he began; ſhifting likewiſe, as you ſee convenient, your hand, and mending your pace, obliging him upon a full ſtop to retire a pace or two backward; and ſo from a Trot you may fall to the Gallop, ever obſerving that Galloping to the right he leads with his left foot; and ſo conſequently Galloping to the left, that he leads to the right; and in ſo doing he will perform it with eaſe and delight; when, on the contrary, if he carries both his feet even, leading with neither, he muſt do it with pain, and be apt ſometimes to ſtrike: and this is ever beſt in caſe of a full ſpeed upon a ſtrait Courſe; and, ſo in uſing convenient Bitts and Furniture, and keeping a ſteady hand, you may ſtop him upon a full career, and oblige him ſuddenly to retire, if any imminent danger be apparent, or ſometimes for your pleaſure; and by ſuch like management you may bring him to the Turnings and ſtrait Turns with little difficulty, and indeed perfect him for any conſiderable Exerciſe; in the performance of which, he ought likewiſe to be conſidered more than what I have formerly mentioned.

When you intend your Horſe for Travel, Sport, or the like, more than what I have already given directions as to Managing, that he may well endure, and anſwer your expectation, obſerve to dreſs him overnight in the ſame manner as has been directed for the Running-horſe; and having by you Dog's-greaſe or Neatsfoot-oyl, anoint him therewith, eſpecially his Joynts, ſuppling it in with your warm hands, or a warm cloth; and in ſo comforting the Nerves and Sinews,

Sinews, you will oblige the Horse to hold out much the better; and in the morning give him three quarts of well sifted Oats, sweet and good, with a quart of Beans split, and the husks taken off, and after them a quart of Ale: And so being Accoutered to your mind, Ride him forth a Racking-pace, till you find his Joynts very plyable, which will be within a Mile or two Riding; then mend his pace, and by degrees put him to either Amble, Trot or Gallop, as best shall please you till you come to your Inn.

Being come to the end of your Stage, if the Horse sweat take off his cloaths by degrees, and with a piece of broken Sword, Scithe, or edged Lath, scrape him all over, and after that rub him with dry wisps or woollen cloths; then pass your hand over him, cleanse his Pasterns and Fetlocks from dirt and gravel, pick his feet, and cast a cloth over him, and give him his potion of meat, which must be a third part more at least than what his usual allowance is when he stands still; and if you find him very hot within, you may give him Water and Ale a like quantity, both being a little warmed, especially in Winter-time, and anoint his Limbs with the same materials, and in the same manner I have before-mentioned; and if you find his breath short, give him an ounce of Hemp-seed well bruised in a glass of Canary or warm Ale, ever forbearing to wash your Horse when he is hot, that is, to ride him into a Pond, or the like; but rather if he be exceeding dirty, warm a Pail full of Water, and with wisps rub him gently clean; or having first rubbed off the dirt with dry wisps, you may cleanse the rest with a Brush. And thus much I thought fit to lay down as a supplement to what has been formerly spoken, not much different in the cases of Ordering and Management; and so proceed to Particulars and Generals of another nature, though tending to the same centre.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

How the Jockies make old Horſes look young. A lean Horſe artificially and naturally; how fatned by Jockies. A Remedy for Reſtiffneſs, Neighing, and the vice of Lying down in the Water, the Art of making Stars, Snips, Blazes, ſetting on falſe Ears, Tails, Manes, &c. with a diſcovery of many other ſecrets.

To make a Horſe that is really old ſeem young.

RUb his Teeth with a Pumice-ſtone, and the Powder of burnt Allom; which rendring them white, take a ſmall Iron, which being crook'd for the purpoſe, burn in the tops of the two formoſt Teeth ſmall holes, ſo big, that a Wheat-corn may enter on each ſide the nether Jaw; and on the Tuſhes do the like, fining them with a Bodkin till the black Scale come off, and the Teeth in that place look brighter than in another: which done, if the pits above the Eyes be hollow, with a ſharp Pen-knife or Lancet ſlit the skin, being before raiſed, and hollowing it as much as you can by the working of your fingers, put into the ſlit a Duck or Crow quill, and blow them up one after another, that the hollowneſs may fill with wind which entering into the Cavities of the skin, will after having been ſtopped up for a time with a Plaiſter of *Diaculum* or Bees-wax fix there, till by ſweat or extraordinary labour it works out: If the Temples are crooked which is a ſign of Age, lay to either of them a Poultis of Hemlock and Cammomoil fryed in Linſeed-oyl; and it will ſo far contract the blood to fill them

them, that for many days they will appear ſtrait: And then for the Hoof which in caſe of Age will be ſeamed or rugged, Take a Raſp or File, and having well ſmoothed it, anoint it well with Oyl of Turpentine for a day or two, and it will look very comely: But in this caſe the Horſe muſt be diſpoſed of within a week at the fartheſt, or elſe the defects will return.

A Horſe ſubject to lye down in the Water how to remedy it.

In this caſe you muſt conſider the Horſe to be of a hot conſtitution, begotten or produced under the fiery Signs of *Leo* and *Scorpio*, or elſe much overflowed with Choler, and therefore ever deſirous to cool himſelf, and thereby rendred in a manner unſerviceable: which Vice to remedy, Ride him into a water up to his Knees and ſuffer him to lye down; then having three or four luſty fellows ready with Boots on, let them ſeize his head, and hold it under water whilſt another beats and belabours him: And this do till you find the Horſe almoſt ſtifled; and in repeating it three or four times, the terror of it will ſo work, that the Horſe will fly from the water more than ever he coveted it, and hardly ſuffered himſelf to be watered, unleſs in a Pail or Trough. This likewiſe may be remedied by Bleeding and Purging your Horſe Spring and Fall, whereby the Humours that occaſion the extraordinary heat and diſorder may not be wanting whereon to feed or contract, having the power and force of inflaming his body, &c.

A Tired

A Tired or Reſtiff Horſe, to remedy.

For the firſt of theſe, being ſubject to Tire without any extraordinary cauſe, ſtamp a handful of Nettles, and pour the Juyce into either of his Ears; and then take a couple of ſmall peeble-ſtones, and put in after it, tying or ſewing up the Ears as advantagiouſly as may be, and with keen Nettles rub his Fundament; laying Hemlock or Arſ-ſmart, called by many Hounds-tongue, under his Saddle, next to his back.

If a Horſe be Reſtiff, and refuſes to go, but will run on one ſide, or go backward, cramp his Stones with a cord, and bring it up between his fore-legs, giving him a twitch when you perceive him froward. and it will oblige him to advance, eſpecially if you keep his Reins even with a ſteady hand; but if a Mare or Gelding which yields no ſuch advantage, be troubled with any ſuch Vice, you muſt have a Crupper with a Braſs or Iron-plate faſtned a little above the Tail, through which may come two or more ſharp points, like Needles, at ſuch time as the Crupper is moved or ſtrained; and then when you find your beaſt practice the Vice, ſtrain the Crupper with your hand, and it will enter the fleſh, and force the beaſt to leap forward. This Vice generally comes by a Horſes not being backed in time, or through the ill management of the Breaker or Rider.

To prevent the Troubleſomeneſs of a Horſe's Neighing, which may prove diſadvantagious to the Maſter, eſpecially in time of War,

Take a long ſlip of Red cloth, dip it in the Oyl of Linſeed, and ſtrew on it the Powder of Elecampane-roots, and on that burnt Allom: faſten it round the Horſe's Tongue as near to the Root as may be; and ſo long as it there remains, you may ſecure your ſelf, your

your Horſe can make no noiſe. And this Art *Darius* the Great *Perſian* King, was ſaid to uſe to the Horſes of his Competitors for the Kingdom, by Bribing their Grooms when the Election depended upon the Neighing of the firſt Horſe.

If a Horſe be dull, and will not feel the Spur without much wounding, Take the following Directions to make him go very nimble with or without a Spur.

Scrape off the hair in the ſpurring-places on either ſide, lay a plaiſter of Roſin and Bees-wax to ſoften the ſkin, then prick it full of holes, ſo that they may juſt paſs through it: which done, take burnt Allom and Copras and rub therein: or you may do it with Powder of Glaſs beaten very fine; and theſe entring the holes, will by a little feſtring, cauſe ſuch a ſoreneſs, that he will run forward upon the leaſt touch with your heel: which having a while uſed him to, you may heal the Sore with Hog's greaſe, Bees-wax and Olive-oyl made into an Oyntment, with the Powder of Alloes.

To make a lean Horſe artificially fat, or to ſeem ſo to the Buyer

Take a Horſe lean but not extraordinary old, rub and comb him well, put him into a warm Stable; Then,

Take a pound of Anniſeeds, the like of the Powder of Licoriſh, half a pound of the Flower of Brimſtone, and half a pound of Dates ſtoned, with ſix ounces of the Powder of Elecampane-roots: bruiſe them well together till they may be reduced to what fineneſs you think convenient; then with a peck of fine Flower, two quarts of Milk, and the Yolks of a dozen Eggs, make them up into balls as big as Pullet's Eggs, give him four of theſe in a morning, and after

after them a quart of new Wort, then give him half a peck of Oats, and after that a Maſh made of Bran, boiled Barley and Lupins; giving him in all circumſtances, the like in the evening, blowing up his Flanks, and the hollowneſs of his Eyes, with quills, ſuffering him to drink but very little, and ſo in a week or ten days he will look very plump and fair to the eye; but being afterward neglected, or kept at hard meat, the ſpungy kind of fleſh or fat ſo gotten, will ſuddenly fall away, and leave perhaps the unskilfull Buyer poſſeſſed with an opinion that the Horſe is bewitched.

To make a lean Horſe really fat, the beſt and cheapeſt way.

In this caſe, as in many other, people are generally wedded to their opinions; but Experience being the beſt Maſter, I ſhall deliver therefore what has been faithfully proved and found effectual: And ſo to bring your expectation to a period.

Take your Horſe from Graſs or Soil; and if the ſeaſon admit, Blood and Purge him gently, that ſo the crudities that hinder the kindly operation of the nutriment may be removed: which done, rub and looſen his skin, and and waſh him all over with the Decoction of Hyſop, Savin, Rue and Fumitory; which will not only cleanſe him from Scurf, and other contracted filth, but render him a kindly heat and breathing: Then give him each morning, before his hard meat, a Ball as big as a Tennis-Ball, or ſuch a one as he can conveniently ſwallow, made of Honey, Rye-flower, the Powder of Licoriſh, burnt Allom-powder, and the Powder of Hart's-horn: And after his hard meat which muſt be given in due proportion, Water wherein Dandelyon-roots, Roſemary and Fennel have been concocted, and in it Bran or Flower duſted; and let his hard meat be Oats, Splent-beans and ſweet Hay,

Airing

Airing him morning and evening, and accommodating him with freſh Litter and good Dreſſing; by which means, in a Month, he will be fat and luſty, have ſound and ſolid fleſh, and be fitting for any company.

To make the Hair of a Horſe that ſtands rough and ſtaring ſmooth and ſleek.

If you would have your Horſe ſmooth and handſome, ſo that your ſelf and others may take delight in him,

Take a French Bruſh and rub his hair the contrary way, fetching out by that means the dirt and ſcurf; ſo that the Horſe being freed there-from, the hair may lye cloſer and ſmoother; then draw your Bruſh and Curry-comb the right way, and having laid the hair as ſmooth as it will be; then if the weather be ſeaſonable, let him Blood in the Neck-veins; and after that paſs over him with your hand, or a cloth dipped in Oyl of Bays, and at convenient times, waſh him with the Decoction of Cammomoil, and keep him well dreſſed, and at good diet.

To make Hair come where it is thin, or to take it away where it is thick.

The hair being thin, which is uncomely in a Horſe, Take the Aſhes of Fern four ounces, the Oyntment of Marſhmallows two ounces, a dram of the Oyl of *Petrolum*, and an ounce of the Powder of Bithwort-roots: waſh or anoint the place with them, mixed with a like quantity of Oyl and Wine, adding thereto an ounce of the Honey of Roſes; and continue ſo to do for a month together: Or for want of theſe, you may waſh the Horſe with a Lye made of the Aſhes of Peaſe-

Peaſe-ſtraw, wherein the green husks of Walnuts and Red Sage have been concocted.

To take off hair, Take Soot of Wood two ounces, Oyl of Tartar two drams, the Calcine of Egg-ſhells half an ounce, with an ounce of unſlaked Lime: make them into a Plaiſter with Oyl of Spike, and apply it to the place you deſign to have bare or thinner; the hair at that time being cloſe clipped.

Stars, Blazes, Snips, what they are, and how to make them for Ornament or Diſguiſe in any part of the Horſe where they may be conveniently ſituate.

Theſe are held, by the Curious, to be great Ornaments to Horſes; and therefore many have ſtudied how to make them, and left ſundry directions as their Opinions, how they ought to be made. But ſince they vary and many of them upon tryal have proved frivolous and ineffectual; therefore I ſhall only give the approved manner and method of making things of this kind.

Firſt then, if you would have a white Star in a Horſe of a different colour, take up the skin, where you endeavour to ſituate it, with a Bodkin or fine Lancet, round about, or as you deſign the mark; and making a piece of Lead, or divers pieces, the better to get them into the hole, that you within ſide the hollowed skin may be framed to the proportion, dipping thoſe pieces in Oyl of Spike or Turpentine; by which means the Skin being ſeperated from the fleſh, and receiving no manner of Alumentary moiſture, will ſhead the hair: which when you perceive, take out the Lead, and clap it cloſe to the fleſh, having anointed the Wound with Honey of Roſes, and the next hair that comes will be of a perfect White. Now there are thoſe that take up the skin by running two Pins or Bodkins croſs-ways, and binding them over with

th a Pack-thread, till the skin be drawn up like a Purſe, at ſo the skin may mortifie: but I hold the firſt e beſt.

To make a Black Star in a white Horſe.

Take of Souters Ink half an ounce, four ſcruples Oliander-Wood beaten to Powder, the Juyce of lemlock half an ounce, Oyl of Ebony two drams, nd Vitriol two drams: often with theſe, well incor-orated, anoint the deſigned place. Or for want of heſe, Take Galls, the Ruſt of Iron, Oyl of Tartar, nd the Aſhes of Fern-roots, of each a like quantity: ruiſe them well together, and apply them Plaiſter-wiſe ill the hair ſheads; and then obſerve the next that comes ill be black.

If you are deſirous of a *Red Star*, then, Take *Aqua itæ* and *Aqua fortis*, of each an equal quantity; adding wo penny weight of Quick-ſilver: incorporate them s well as may be with two drams of Tartar, and as much of the Flower of Brimſtone; and by anointing he place deſigned therewith, the hair will become Red, but will continue no longer ſo than till the caſting of he Colt; at what time you may in like manner re-new it.

As for Blazes and Snips, the one is made generally on the middle of the Forehead deſcending, and the o-ther on the Muzzle, between the two Noſtrils, or ſome-what higher; and may be made by the means afore-ſaid, in what manner and form you ſhall think conve-nient, to imitate thoſe that are natural ones: and ſo you may change Saddle-ſpots. And ſeeing thoſe that commonly paſs for Stars are only round Spots, I have thought fit to give further directions on this occaſion.

If you intend to make an extraordinary Ado
ment in the front of your Horſe, you may make

Star, as the form in the M
gin, by ſhaping fine, fl
though taper, pieces of Lea
ſo that the points extendi
every way under the skin
when gently raiſed, the b
or broad ends may meet in
centre juſt in the middle
the forehead; the Lead bei
anointed with Oyl of Spike or Tartar, and ſo ſuff
it to remain till the hair is fallen away; and then t
king out the Lead, ſuffer it to cloſe, having well
nointed the inſide with Deer's-ſuet and Oyl of Roſes
and ſo continue to do till you perceive the hair we
cloſed, and the white hair will come undoubtedly
the form of the Figure, which you may make leſſe
or bigger at your diſcretion: And in this form yo
may make a black Star, according to the directions fo
black Stars.

Some are of Opinion, that a black, or any dark-co
loured Horſe, may for Ornament-ſake have four whit
feet, as they uſually are termed, made artificially
and they ſay it may be done by the Application of the fol
lowing Cataplaſm, or rather Plaiſter, *viz.*

Take *Reſalgar* a dram in Powder, put to it a dram
of the Oyl of Tartar or Vitriol, with an ounce of the
Oyl of Harts-horn, and two ounces of the Juyce o
the Roots of Lillies, as much of that of Celendine,
made up to a thickneſs, with the greaſe of a Hedge-
hog or Urchin, applied Poultis or Plaiſter-wiſe: by
which means the hair being taken up by the roots,
and the fleſh for a time mortified; which may be re-
ſtored by ſuppling Oyntments, the hair will come a-
gain as white as Milk: Nor am I much different in
opinion; but this being a thing rarely required, and

ſeldom

ldom experienced, I leave it to be tried by thoſe that eſire it, and proceed to other matters: But by the way ſhall ſay thus much, that if the feet by the aforeſaid xperiment can be changed in Colour, then conſequently the Tail, Ears, or any other part of the Body, by the ike application, may be the ſame.

To make a Blaze-Royal.

In this caſe, by reaſon of the intricacy, Lead being ery difficult to frame, or at leaſt-ways to put into he skin, ſo that one part may touch, and the other ot; for ſo it muſt do, or the Mark will be all of a colour, with a fine pair of Sciſſars cut the Figure in the Margin as near and exact as may be, to the skin; and having made a Lye of Urine and Soap-boylers Aſhes, thoſe which appear for the black ſtroaks in the Figure, and which you muſt only cut down, anoint; and ſo do three or four days, which will ſtay the hair in the root: Then take *Aqua fortis* half an ounce, Oyl of Sulpher the like quantity; add to them two drams of the Powder of Crabs-claws calcined, and with it anoint the places with a ſmall Pencil or four or five days ſucceſſively, and the next hair hat comes in a white Horſe will be inclining to black, nd that in a black Horſe to white; and ſo in any coloured Horſe it will alter and change the colour proportionably. But if you would have this plain, it may be done with Lead, as the Star will make appear; nd will not only prove an excellent mark to know a Horſe by from others when at Graſs, or the like, but infallibly to deſcribe him by when loſt, that without much difficulty of charge he may be found.

The loſs of Ears, how to ſupply.

If your Horſe has loſt his Ears, and thereby become uncomely, you may ſupply them with thoſe of a dea Horſe, by ſewing and glewing them on ſo artificially that the Horſe by moving the roots of his Ears, ſha move them as if they were naturally his own. Bu as a farther myſtery, ſome have held, and indeed bears the face of a poſſibility, that the ſtump of th Ears being pared, ſo that being taken off to the Quick as near the roots as may be, and the Ears of anothe Horſe new cut off, clapped on warm, and ſewed dow whilſt the blood iſſues from the ſtumps, they will b being anointed with Oyl of Juniper or Bays, by a kin of Inoculation graft themſelves to the ſtumps or roots and become natural. And this they hold likewiſe ma be done by Teeth, in putting a Tooth juſt drawn in to the place from whence a ſtump is juſt drawn like wiſe. This alſo they hold may be done by the Tail o a Horſe; but not having been proved by me, I leave th Experiment to the diſcretion of the Reader.

Falſe Manes there are likewiſe to ſupply ſuch a fall off; and are not altogether improper, becauſe they ſerve for Ornament as well as the beſt; and theſe are taken off from dead Horſe's skin and roots; and being Tanned or dried, ſo that the Leather become plyable, and may be ſhaved ſo thin on the fleſhy ſide that it will ſit cloſe to the live Horſe's Creſt, off from which the hair is ſhaved or taken by the roots, with Applications, it being firſt clapped on with Glew o Pitch, may be ſewed to the Horſe's skin, in ſuch a manner, that the hairs of the one, and the other ri ſing over the ſeams, it will hardly be diſcerned, eſpeci ally at a diſtance.

And

And thus have I laid down such things as I thought convenient of this kind, nor to deceive the Buyer, but to the end, that he knowing them, may not be deceived: And as a Caveat, bid him farther beware of Logging a lame Horse with Lead to make him go as if he was sound: As also the Spring-saddle, which by the Rider's leaning forward pricks the Horse so intolerably upon the bearing between the shoulders, that if he be never so dull, he will caper and jump as if it proceeded from his high mettle; which hidden cause frequently deceives the unskilfull.

CHAP. III.

How to set a Horse off for Sale to the best advantage, by Trimming, Washing, &c. as also directions for the Management of a Horse in Hunting, relating to his Leaping, &c. with other things and matters worthy of note.

YOur Horse being repleat with hair on the Mane, Tail, and sometime, especially if he be of the *Dutch* breed, on the Legs or Pasterns, so that thereby he appears rough and unseemly to the eye; I say, if it so happen whereby sometimes the unskilfull Buyer without a cause is discouraged, having your Scissers, Razor, Comb, Brush and Sponge in a readiness, as also your Tweezers or Curling-Iron, comb well his Foretop, Mane and Tail, and with your Brush and Comb settle his Legs, if occasion require it: Then dust him over, and do the like again after that, be-

ginning at the Foretop with your Razor, ſhave away the ſhort briſtling hairs underneath it, that cauſe it by the means of their ſtubborneſs to bruſtle and ſtand ſtaring; as likewiſe thoſe that grow unſightly about the roots of the Ears: which done, divide the Foretop into two equal parts, and then clip it with your Sciſſers aſlope between, and ſo turn it waving up in two diviſions with your Tweezers, and faſten it with a Skewer; and ſo do by his Mane and Tail, clipping off the ends of thoſe hairs that hang unſeemly, long, or out of order, ſo that in a ſhort time they will appear comely in Waves, or Ringlets; and thus, although the Mane falls two ways, you may reduce it to one ſide, *&c.* As for the Legs, having clipped away the ſuperfluous hairs, ſmooth them down with Oyl of Bays as hot as may be endured; and in doing ſo two or three times, you will afterward find the hair lye cloſe.

How to make a Ball, wherewith a Horſe being well Lathered and ſmoothed down, ſhall look exceeding ſleek and comely.

Take of Cake-ſoap a pound, Fulling-earth four ounces, the Lye of Wood-aſhes a pint, and Almond-flower two ounces: boil them together over a gentle fire till they become a gellied thickneſs, then ſuffering the Maſs to cool, make it up by drying it in an Oven or Stove, into a ball, and with it make a Waſh or Lather of new Wort, if it may be had; or elſe with warm water, and Lather him over with it, being before well bruſhed down, and ſo ſuffer him to ſtand till the frothy part ſink of it ſelf; and then with your hand dipped in Water wherein Gum-araback has been diſſolved, paſs over his body, and after that with a fine Woollen-cloth, and then with your hand again till he

he be dry ; and he will not only appear wonderful ſleek, but continue ſo for many days.

How to manage a Horſe in Leaping, taking a Hedge, Gate, Stile, Ditch, &c.

Many have held this a difficult piece of Horſemanſhip, as indeed it is ; for by ill management in this affair either the Horſe or Man has been often ſpoiled, and ſometimes both of them together ; and ſuch accidents fall out through the careleſsneſs of the Rider, or ill management of the Horſe: Wherefore to remedy it and prevent danger, let the Rider obſerve, that he not only ſit faſt himſelf upon the motion of Riſe, but that bearing ſomewhat forward to give the Horſe the more ſway, he keep the Reins even and ſteady on either hand ; but not too hard, leaſt the Horſe riſing too high, may happen to over-ſet, or loſe by ſuch a motion the force of the ſpring of his hinder Legs, and by that means be rendered leſs able to cant his body or draw them nimbly after him, which frequently occaſions a ſtrain or ſlip, eſpecially at a Ditch. And the beſt way on this occaſion to hold your Rod or Whip, is either between his Ears, or ſomewhere out of ſight, leaſt it cauſe him to boggle, by inclining more to the one hand than to the other ; or for fear of being corrected, force himſelf beyond his reach. As for your Legs, you ought to keep them moderately cloſe to his Sides, but not ſo cloſe as to preſs his Ribs, for that will oblige him to bate of his ſtrength.

At a Gate or Stile ever obſerve your diſtance before you ſuffer your Horſe to take it, which ought to be ſomewhat more than a Man's pace from it, leaſt by the over-reaching of the fore-legs the hinder-legs either ſtrike or ſtick in the barrs, which

through the ſudden motion occaſions an extraordinary Bruiſe, if not the Leg to ſnap ſhort off.

As for a Ditch, rather chuſe to leap againſt a moderate riſing bank, then upon a deſcent or low place, becauſe in doing the latter the Horſe comes down with ſo great a force, that he will be either apt to ſtumble on his noſe, if not well ſupported by a ſteady hand, or elſe to ſprain or ſlip his ſhoulder.

As for the Hedge-leaping, the greateſt care required is to ſhun the Stakes, and the like to be done by the ſharp ends of Pails, leaſt the Horſe by an Over-reach gore himſelf: And in this caſe conſider both the Bank and the Ditch, if any there be, leaſt you force your Horſe upon a thing too hard for him, and by that means be both together left in the mire, or in a worſer condition. Nor is it convenient in Hunting to ride a Horſe in places where theſe things are required, unleſs he be managed at leaſure before-hand; for being upon full-ſpeed, your Horſe ſeeing others who are managed, undertake theſe matters of difficulty, and thereby prompted to imitate them, will in ſpite perhaps of your utmoſt endeavour to the contrary, reſolutely attempt to follow them; for indeed no Creature deſires more to Emulate his like than a generous Horſe; nor, according to his underſtanding, is more proud of winning praiſe and applauſe: For, as the Poet has it,

When to the Barrs the Foaming Steeds are lead,
They Prancing, ſeem to ſcorn the Ground they tread;
And when the Signal's given, either flies
Like Lightning, Emulous to gain the Prize;
Whilſt with their thundring Hoofs the Earth does ſhake,
As when the ſtruggling Winds a War within it make:

Nor

Nor less, when loud the Bloody blast it sounds,
Do they refrain o'er Spears, o'er Death and Wounds;
Through Smoke and Flame, and every Dire attack'd,
To Rushly the enraged Warriours Back'd,
And face the boldest things that they dare act.
Nay, in the Noble strife each one does press,
Where Danger may his Courage most express,
To render each his Competitor less.
So that the Lawrel, Conquerers put on
More by their Horses than themselves is won.
So Great Bucephalus *made it appear,*
Who Alexander *on his Back did bear*
About the World, scattering his Bloody War.

Nor have good Horses been less famed and esteemed in all Ages. But having thus passed over what I hope in this kind cannot be amiss, but on the contrary, prove profitable and necessary; I shall proceed to other Experiments, and things that may yet add to what has been said, that no variety may be wanting in so necessary a Work, nor any thing material be omitted.

CHAP. IV.

What the Stable to keep a good Horſe in ought to be; and how he ought to be regarded; the Hoofs how to be corrected and mended in Shooing; and upon other occaſions.

AS for the Stable wherein a good Horſe ought to be kept, let it ever be paved with flat hard Stone, ſo well laid, that no wet can get in between to occaſion, by its long continuance, unwholſome Airs; and let it be likewiſe laid ſlantwiſe ſhelving, or as it is vulgarly called, down hill, that ſo the ſtale may run into a channel, provided to carry it away, having a covering of Canvaſs even with the Rack, to prevent the falling of Mortar amongſt the Horſe's Provender: or ſome are of the opinion to have it ceiled, if it be boarded over head, to prevent the duſt or hay-ſeeds and many other ill-conveniencies: but above all, keep Swine and Poultry from coming into it, the ſcent of the one, and the dung of the other, being very offenſive. The Rack ought to be made of firm Oak, both the Bearings and the Staves, that the Horſe may have the leſs power to bite them, if he be ſo inclined; and the Managers be likewiſe made of firm Plank, well ſeaſoned and dried, having Pins or Wooden-pegs conveniently placed to hang the Bridles, Saddles, Girths, Cloths, Rubbers, Combs, Bruſhes, and the like materials on; obſerving if conveniency will permit, to have a couple of Windows to open, one to the North, and the other to the South; opening the firſt in Summer to let in the cool Air, as occaſion requires; and the

the laſt in dry Sun-ſhiny days in Winter, to let in the cheriſhing heat, or freſh and gentle gales, which will contribute to the vivacity of the Horſe, and render him more ſprightfull; and ever give him for his Litter Wheat or Rye-ſtraw; but of theſe two, the former is the beſt; and if you perceive him ſubject alſo to eat his Litter, you muſt Muzzle him after that he has ended his Provender, leaſt he otherwiſe do contract an ill habit of body; ever giving him his Provender in due time, with convenient opportunity to take his reſt at ſeaſonable times: And if it ſo happen, as in many caſes it is neceſſary, that you Shooe him your ſelf; or if done by another, in giving directions to the beſt advantage, you may take the following Rules.

If it happen to be the hinder feet you undertake, then conſider the Toe is ever the tendereſt part, and muſt be pared with a gentle hand, being left of a convenient thickneſs, that it may be capable of defending the Quick from Gravel, Stand, or being hurt by ſtriking againſt hard ſtones; ſuffering the Shooe likewiſe to be thicker at the Toe than in any other part; which Shooe muſt be ſet on even and clever, not inclining to one part more than another, which you muſt conſider after your having pared the hoof to an evenneſs, and ſtruck a Nail on each ſide, not only by narrowly viewing it, but by ſuffering the Horſe to ſet his foot on the ground; and if any unevenneſs happen that is not over-great it may be remedied by ſtriking the hoof with the Hammer, without the trouble of drawing the Nails; both your Shooe and Nails being made of tough Iron, that they may in no-wiſe be ſubject to break, and ſo in a Journey deceive your hope; the holes for the Nails being made moſtly towards the Heels, becauſe of the weakneſs of the Toe.

In

In caſe the Foot has a falſe quarter, which looks in a manner like a piece put in, then muſt the Shooe have on that part a Button, or be a little more raiſed than the other on the inſide, a ſmall ſpace from the quarter nearer to the Toe, that thereby the ſtreſs may be taken off the quarter ſo defective, and the Horſe thereby rendred uncapable of limping.

If by reaſon of the ſwelling or ſtanding of the hoof inward the Horſe be apt to interfere, then muſt ſo much of it as is convenient be taken away with a Raſp; and in paring the outſide, ſuffer the inſide to be ſomewhat of the higheſt, that it may oblige the Horſe to tread a little outward: or if it cannot be ſo well done in paring the hoof, let it be in the thickneſs of the ſhooe on that ſide more than on the other, fixing the edges ſo cloſe to the hoof, that it may have no opportunity to cut or interfere; and in caſe the Horſe be hoof-bound, anoint his hoofs with Oyl of Turpentine, and ſtop his feet with new Cow-dung fryed in Olive-oyl and Hog's Lard, making him a ſhooe in the form of a Half-moon, that by its openneſs it may be no obſtruction to the encreaſe or ſtretching of the hoof: And this may ſuffice for the hinder-feet in caſe of any reaſonable hoof; from which I ſhall proceed to thoſe of the fore-feet.

In caſe the hoofs of the fore-feet be well placed and ſound, even, firm and tough, then any reaſonable ſhooe will ſerve the turn; yet in this caſe muſt it be pared, and kept from running to diſorder, and when you have occaſion to Travel much in Winter, or in any wet ſeaſon, it will not be amiſs, to prevent its fretting and expanding, to ſeer the edges with a Bar, or other piece of Iron, ſuffering the ſhooe to ſwell no more on the toe than on the heel, becauſe, in this caſe, the heel is the tendereſt part, and muſt, the rather of the two, riſe higher than the toe; and if the Horſe be not ſubject to interfere, you may

ſuffer

ſuffer the ſhooe, for the preſervation of the hoof, to ſtand a ſtraws breadth beyond it, even every way, Nailing it on in ſuch wiſe, that the points of the Nails may ſtand in an even round, and ſeem upon their ringing off and clenching to ſink ſomewhat into the hoof; ever obſerving to keep Gravel from under the ſhooes. Now there are divers ſorts of unnatural and offenſive hoofs, hapning through neglect and accident; ſome of them that will never bear a ſhooe well, and others that cannot be brought to it without much pain and induſtry: And the principal of theſe are,

The rugged hoof, the brittle hoof, the narrow heels, the flat hoof, the broad fruſh, and the crooked hoof; and to theſe, ſhooes muſt be purpoſely made and fitted, and the paring be ſhaped accordingly: The Particulars of which being uncertain or at leaſt too tedious for this diſcourſe, I refer them to the Skilfull Farrier, whoſe proper buſineſs is to order and reduce them, ſo as they may become practicable and uſefull.

If the hoof be damaged by reaſon of any Nail that lurks therein, not eaſily to be found, it muſt by all means be looked after, and taken thence; and the place of its aboad or lodgement may be found by ſundry means and ways, but chiefly by the heat of that place more than any other, or by the Horſe's ſhrinking up his foot, or ſtrike thereon, or pinch it with your Pincers.

The place being found, pull off the ſhooe, and open the foot gently with a Buttreſs or Drawing-knife; and if you can come at it, pull it out; if not, apply the Plaiſter I have mentioned for drawing out Thorns, Stubs or Splinters: Or, for your more readineſs thus:

Having in the beſt manner laid open the Wound, Take of Stone-pitch, Tar, Turpentine and Bees-wax,

wax, of each an ounce, and half a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Garlick: make them over a gentle fire into a Plaister, and apply them as hot as may be endured; and sometimes it so happens, that by long continuance the Nail in working breaks out above the hoof; and in such a case apply Honey, Burgundy-pitch, and the Powder of burnt Allom, or a Poultis of Mallows, Cammomoil and Groundsel, fryed in Hogs Lard, and beaten up with the Whites of Eggs and Rye-meal, and applying it as hot as may be endured; and in so often doing it will break the Skin, so that the cause of the grievance may be removed; but by the addition of half an ounce of Verdegrease it will bring away the Corruption, and heal the Wound.

Critical Days, and the Observations thereon.

AND now since it may not be amiss to say something of the *Critical Days*, observed by many as to Health and Sickness; which relate not only to humane Constitutions, but those of all Creatures, I shall here incert them.

These days are accounted such wherein are manifested Alterations in relation to Sickness or Health, Life or Death: And as for the *Critick-Day*, it is ever principally to be observed after the beginning of the Sickness, as the 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 14. 17. 21. 28. In which days so cursorily to be observed, no strong Medicines or Purgations ought to be given; nor is it convenient to let Blood, unless great necessity require it: And other days there are in which many Learned Men hold, if Man or Beast fall sick, he shall hardly

hardly escape, and that not without much difficulty, which are noted to be these, *viz. January* 1. 7. *February* 3. 4. *March* 1. 4. *April* 8. 10. *May* 2. 7. *June* 10. 15. *July* 11. 13. *August* 3. 2 *September* 3. 10. *November* 3. 5. *December* 7. 10. And many add, that if any dangerous disease happen on the 10*th.* of *August*, 1*st* of *December*, or 6*th.* of *April*, it will go very near to terminate in Death. Now there are on the contrary, other days held to be good days; and that if a disease happen on them, there is great hopes of recovery; nay, there is great hopes of succeeding in taking a Journey, or any Labour wherein Man or Beast is concerned; and these are held to be the 3*d* and 13*th* of *January*. The 5*th.* and 28*th* of *February*. The 3*d*, 22*d* and 30*th* of *March*. The 5*th*, 22*d*. and 29*th* of *April*. The 4*th* and 28*th* of *May*. The 3*d* and 8*th* of *June*. The 12*th*, 13*th*, and 15*th* of *July*. The 12*th* of *August*. The 1*st*, 7*th*, 24*th*, and 28*th* of *September*. The 4*th* and 15*th* of *October*. The 13*th* and 19*th* of *November*. The 23*d* and 26*th* of *December*. And these indeed by the Antients, were held in wonderfull esteem; they generally taking their measures thereby, as to what I have said in relation to them; nor are they to be neglected or slighted by Practitioners in Physical or Chyrurgical matters, either in relation to Man or Beast; no, nor in their undertaking, relating to Labour, or the like, but have

Some further Considerations upon the Cause of Diseases, and how to Remove them, Physically discussed, &c.

The cause of a Disease proceeds principally from an effect against Nature, and happens either External or Internal; the External is that which is outwardly visible, and consists generally of what comes by Strokes, Bruises, Wrenches, Scalds, Shot, or any manner

manner of Wound; Thoſe Internal are occult, or hid within the body, and conſequently the leſs diſcernable, and are divided into an Antecedent and Conjunction. The Conjunction is that which is neareſt, and immediately cauſes the Diſeaſe, and is generally held to be the Blood which cauſes the Flegm; nor is it reckoned the Antecedent doth actually cauſe the diſeaſe, but procures matter, and ſtirs it up almoſt to the creating a diſeaſe; but between it and the diſeaſe are ſome Cauſes placed, *viz.* abundance of humours and ill digeſtion; and therefore theſe things ought to be chiefly conſidered before any one abſolutely attempts to diſpell the diſeaſe, by reaſon diſeaſes are firſt cured by removing the Cauſe antecedent, and after that the Cauſe conjunct: And as for the External diſeaſes, they ought to be known, becauſe they breed diſeaſes Internal, and very much change the blood, and with much diligence are therefore to be ſought out, that ſo the Practitioner may be brought to the perfect knowledge of Internal diſeaſes; and theſe External diſeaſes are not either to be avoided or amended, but neceſſarily penetrate the body, as Air infected, Meat, Drink, Labour, Sleep, Watching or Wakefulneſs, Repletion and Evacuation, and ſome diſorders that frequently happen, or to be avoided as unneceſſary; as Bruiſes, Strains, Slips, Wounds, Strangling, or the like.

As for the true cauſe of a diſeaſe, it ſometimes proceeds from corrupt matter whereof they are generated: or when either the Sire or Dam is infected with any diſeaſe, the corrupt quality of which coming into the Seminal Veſſels, and tranſmitting the like to the creature generated, making it hereditary; and at other times it proceeds from bad uſage, bad feeding, heats, colds, and many more which I have named in the firſt Part. And again, as I have here hinted, Internal diſeaſes may proceed from External ſtrokes

ſtrokes, bruiſes or the like. And thus much for Phyſical Obſervations of this kind: From whence I proceed to give an accurate Relation of the Spirits, by which the frame of Life is ſupported: which take as followeth.

The Spirits; what they are, with their Office, &c.

The Spirit is the Aerious and ſubtle ſubſtance of a Body generated of the moſt pure and thin Blood, and is the Original mover and ſupporter of the Members, giving them power to perform their office, and is ſeated chiefly in the Brain and Heart, from whence it dilates it ſelf by the means of the Nerves and Arteries into all parts of the body, and is divided into three parts, *viz.* Animal, Vital and Natural, the Animal peculiarly claims the Brain for its ſeat, for there it is prepared and made, and from thence defuſes it ſelf inſenſible ways to the Eyes, Ears, and the like.

The Vital Spirit is chiefly ſeated in the left Ventricle of the Heart, and has its paſſages through the Arteries, being made of the Evaporation or ſweet-breathing of the pureſt blood, and is furniſhed with matter to rarifie it from the Air that is drawn in by the Lungs, and by its motion through the frame of the body is the conſervation of natural heat.

The Natural Spirit is ingendred in the Liver and Veins, and is wonderfully inſtrumental in the concoction of the nutriment, and turning it into blood, and then is farther imployed in diſtributing it through the Veins that branch from the *Vena cava*, into every part of the Body. And if any of theſe are waſted or expulſed from its proper ſeat, unleſs it ſpeedily return, there is no hopes of life: And ſo in caſe of Famiſhing, *viz.* When the nutriment in the ſtomach is ſpent, then nature preys upon the Blood, and after that upon the

the Humour; and laſtly, upon the Vital Spirits; at what time the Body, though alive, is paſt recovery.

A further Deſcription of the External Parts, &c.

And now, the better to deſcribe, or at leaſt make the Reader more ſenſible of the Chyrurgical part of this Book, I proceed to give a brief Relation of the Material parts of a Horſe's Body. As,

1. The Members are Bodies, ingendred of the firſt commixion of the Elements, Humours and Spirits, becauſe they are found to conſiſt of a ſolid, fleſhy, and ſpirituous Subſtance; and theſe are diſtinguiſhed by, or divided into Eight principal Parts, as Bones, Sinews, Ligaments, Tendons, Fibres, Membranes, and ſimple Fleſh and Skin; to which may be joyned Veins, Fat, Marrow, Arteries, Hair, Hoofs, and the like. Now to come nearer the purpoſe, a Bone is of ſubſtance Earthly, dry and hard, the better to ſupport the frame of the Body, and is it ſelf-nouriſhed through little Pores, by the pureſt fat, converted through heat into Marrow. A Griſtle is likewiſe termed a ſoft and pliable Bone, the better to ſtrengthen and move the Members. A Ligament is a tough and more pliable kind of a Griſtle, holding or bending the Bones together. A Tendon is the end and tail of the Arbitrary Muſcles by which the Members are more eaſily moved. A Fibre is a ſmall thread, firm and ſtrong, which Nature places in the Muſcles to create a right motion, or a motion every way; for as the right Fibres draw forward, the tranſverſe put back, and the oblique hold faſt. A Membrane and a Coat differ only in this, *viz.* A Membrane is the name of a Subſtance, and the Coat the name of an Office; for where a Membrane inveſts any part, it is called a Coat. As for the Skin, it is generally called the great Membrane, covering the

the whole Body, and over-caſting the frame or ſtructure thereof, and is made ſpongy or porous, the better to purge out the Excremental moiſture by ſweat. As for the Fleſh and Fat encreaſed by nouriſhment, it is raiſed and produced from and by the pureſt ſort of blood and nutriment: And when between all theſe there is a concordance and agreement, then is there a cheerfulneſs in the ſpirits, and a harmony throughout the frame of nature.

As for the Materials you ought to furniſh your ſelf withall, for the performance of the ſundry Cures I have mentioned, if you are unskilfull in knowing them or any of them: As for the Herbs and Roots, a Herbal will direct you; and for the Minerals, Gums, Seeds, Barks, Oyls, and the like, you may conſult ſome Druggiſt: For ſhould I go about to deſcribe them particularly, they would take up a large Volume; and when that was done, you not perhaps much the wiſer, unleſs the Portraictures were likewiſe diſplayed. Wherefore let it ſuffice that I have ſpoken intelligibly of all things which I conceived neceſſary or dependant on this Subject; and have, according to my promiſe, expoſed to your view, and left you to your conſideration ſundry rare Receipts and Experiments, never before in Print; and ſuch as, I doubt not, will be Approved by thoſe that vouchſafe to try them, and turn not only to their Pleaſure, but Advantage, and be a means to preſerve this Generous Creature in a ſtate of health and ſtrength, and render him tractable and obedient to his Owner: And in ſuch hopes I remain further to ſerve you, as opportunity or occaſion will admit.

THE

The THIRD PART:

Treating of the *Cures* and *Diſeaſes* in CATTLE.

Diſeaſes in Bulls, Oxen, Cows, Calves, &c. how to Cure, &c.

SEeing theſe Creatures are very uſeful and profitable to Mankind, it is altogether neceſſary to preſcribe ſuch Things as are neceſſary for their Improvement and Preſervation: As for the Breeding and Managing there are few Ignorant, whoſe Affairs lead them this way; therefore the Diſeaſes incident to them are here more properly as an Appendix to the foregoing Work, which by this time we hope has given ſufficient ſatisfaction.

The *Murrain*, much incident to this ſort of Cattle, is known by driveling, running at the Noſe, and Mouth, dulneſs and ſinking of the Eyes, pining away, *&c.*

To Cure this, Take Fennel ſeed, the roots of Angellico, and Sea-thiſtle; ſtamp and infuſe them over a gentle fire with Red-wine and Ale; give the liquid part hot, and keep the Beaſt warm, and two or three hours after make him a Maſh of Wheat, boiled in Small Beer.

For the Flux or Lasks,

Take dryed Sloes, bruiſe them to powder, add Raiſins and dryed Grapes; boil them in Vinegar, and give them hot when the beaſt is faſting, and keep him ſo an hour or two after.

For the Lasks, or Ray in Calves, or Cough in young Bullocks or Heifers. For the Calves.

Take new Milk, put in ſo much Renit as may Curdle it; warm it over a fire, and give it them hot two or three times. As for the other, Take a pint of Barley, the yolk of an Egg, a handful of Raiſins; boil them in a quart of *Aqua vitæ*, and give it them as hot as poſſible may be endured.

For Scalds or Mangineſs.

Rub them well with a Hair-cloth dipped in the Juyce of Garlick and Rue, and a day after with the Concoction

of

of Penny-royal, and flower of Brimſtone, made with Water and Bay-ſalt,

For any Diſtemper in the Lungs,

Take Cloves, Anniſeeds, Long-pepper, Turmerick and Fenugreek, of each an ounce; boil them in ſmall Ale, and give half a pint hot in a Morning for a week.

For Piſſing Blood.

Let them ſtand twenty-four hours without drinking, and then let them bloud in the Tail; after that boil Nettles, and Aſh Leaves, or the Bark of an Aſh-tree, in Spring-water and give it them hot

For the Taint and Garrys,

Take Urine and Bay-ſalt, with the Roots of Red-docks; boil them and bathe the afflicted Place very hot Morning and Evening. and afterwards anoint it with Sheeps ſuet as hot as may be endured.

For ſtoppage of Urine.

Take a pint of French-wine, the Whites of nine Eggs, ſix Cloves of Garlick; give the Liquid part well preſſed and ſtrained faſting.

For any poiſoning Infection, or pain in the belly Swelling or Internal bruiſe,

Take four ounces of the Rhind of Elder a handfull of Longwort, an ounce of Licoriſh, a handfull of Rue; boil them in three pints of Ale, and whilſt they are boiling put in a handfull of Bay-ſalt, ſix cloves of Garlick, and four Eggs with the Shells; add a pint of Beer, an ounce of Venice-Treacle, and the like quantity of Bay-berries; give the Liquor hot.

For the Sperenges and Staggers.

Let him blood in the forehead by ſlitting the Skin acroſs, and after a ſhort Bleeding put warm Vinegar into his Noſe, his head being held upward.

For being Hide-bound, which hinders the growth of Cattle,

Boil Bay-leaves in Water, and rub them over as hot as may be, and then let them blood in the Neck; and after that rub them with Lees of Vine, and Neats-foot Oil.

For a Fever in Cattle.

Let them blood in the Tail, give them Colewort-Leaves

Leaves to Eat, boil Colts-foot, the Leaves or branches of the Vine, and the roots of Violets in Water, giving them the Liquid part as hot as may be.

To Cure halting.

Slit the Claws till they bleed, and bind a cloth dipped in Vinegar and Salt, to the place, and keep the Beaſt in a dry place; and ſo by twice or thrice renewing it, that diſorder will ceaſe.

To Cure the Swelling in Cattle by breaking into freſh Paſture, and over-feeding, or by licking up any venemous matter,

Take half a pint of Sallad oil, as much warm Milk, an ounce of Licoras powder, and an ounce of Mithridate; give them very hot, and keep the beaſt in motion, till he voids at both ends, or the Swelling abates.

For any Blain, or outward Sorrance,

Take half an ounce of Turpentine, the like of Verdegreaſe, an ounce of Bees-wax, and the like of Mutton-ſuet; make them into an Oyntment over a gentle fire, and apply them plaiſter-wiſe two or three times to the place grieved.

For Kops, or Riſings in the fleſh,

Apply oyntment of Tobacco and a plaiſter of Diaculum.

For the Pains in the Bowels,

Take a handfull of Fumitory, as much May-weed, or Cammomoil; boil them in Milk and Small beer, and give it hot.

For the Quinzy.

Take half a pint of Vinegar, as much ſalad Oil, an ounce of Mithridate; give them very hot.

Diſtempers incident to Rams, Ewes, Lambs, &c. how to cure, &c.

For the Head-Ach, or pains in the Head of Sheep.

Take ſix grains of *Aſſa fœtida*, two ſpoonfuls of the Juyce of Sage, a quartern of Wine-Vinegar, and give them the Sheep as warm as may be.

In caſe of Rheums, Catarrhs, or Coughs,

Take an ounce of Dill-ſeed and as much of Bayberries, a handful of Vervine, and two ounces of brown Sugar-Candy; bruiſe and boil them in a pint of Cyder, or

r Verjuyce, and give it faſting as hot as can be endured.

For the Plague and Rot.

Waſh them with Water wherein Baum has been boiled, ive them to drink a Water wherein Rue, Sow-thiſtle and ervine have been boiled, and ſeaſon it with Allom.

For Boils Apoſthumes, or Ulcers, that are not come to a head,

Mix Rye-flower, Yolks of Eggs, and Tar, applying hem plaiſter-wiſe, and when they are drawn to a head aunce or prick them, and apply Honey, Allom and Roſin, made into a ſalve over a gentle fire.

For Scabs, or Breaking out of that nature.

Take a quarter of a pint of the Juyce of Hyſop, the ike of Cammomoil, and a quart of Water wherein To-acco-ſtalks have been boiled, two ounces of Brimſtone-lower, a handfull of Fern-roots, and a quart of Urine; waſh the Sheep with it hot twice a day.

For Purſivenes.

Take a quart of Vinegar, an ounce of Licoras-pouder, Venice-treacle, half an ounce, Carduus an ounce; boil hem and give them hot: This does likewiſe for ſhort Wind, and Cures the Swelling in the Belly.

For St. Anthony's *Fire.*

Bathe them with Goats Milk, and the Juyce of Briony very hot, and give them Water wherein Sage and Endive have been boiled.

To ſupple broken Joynts, Sprains, Wrenches, and fractured Bones.

Put thoſe that are diſlocated in their right places, hen take an Oyntment, Bees-wax, Turpentine, Deers-uet, the Juyce of Mugwort, Stone Pitch, and Melliot, oftened with the Oil of Earth-worms, and bind up he place, ſuppling it with Oyntment as occaſion requires.

For Lameneſs, which is occaſioned by too much Wool growing in the fleſhy part of their feet.

Rub between their Claws Allom, Vinegar, and Bay-ſalt.

Approved Receipts to Cure Diſeaſes in *Swine.*

SWine are very profitable Creatures for the benefit of Mankind, and therefore amongſt other Domeſticks ought

ought to be in eſteem; wherefore for their Preſervatio we propoſe the following Directions for cure as to th moſt uſual Diſtempers incident to them.

For the Head-Ach, or Sleepy-Evil.

Bleed them under the Tongue, and rub the Woun with Bay-ſalt, giving them for a time Cabage or Colewort Leaves, Tears Peaſe and Whey, to drink.

For the Meaſles.

Rub them over with water & ſalt, mix Parſley-roots with their Meat, & put Allom into their Water, in which ſte Pue

If Agues or Feaver afflict them, let them blood the Neck-vein, and Tail, and give them warm Water an Bran thrice a day; alſo water between whiles wherein Parſnips, and Pepper have been boiled.

For the Swine-Pox,

Take an ounce of Mithridate and as much Pepper half a pint of Olive-oyl, a pint of new Ale, and two ounces of Honey give them very warm.

For Rheums, or Catarrhs,

Take half an ounce of Brimſtone, as much of Bungundia pitch, hold his head by force over them, whilſt burning on a Chafing diſh of Coles; after which give a Drench of Garlick, Pepper and Rue boiled in new Small beer.

For the Plague, or any Diſeaſe in the Melt,

Take three ounces of Honey, two ounces of Bees-wax an ounce of Ginger, and two ounces of Coriander-ſeeds boil them in three pints of Milk, ſtrain the Liquid part and give it hot.

To Cure the Flux,

Take Nut-gall two ounces, as much ſtarch, a handfull of Bettony, half an ounce of Turpentine; boil them in a pint of Milk and a quart of Vinegar, and give it hot three Mornings.

For the Belly-ach,

Take an ounce of Long-pepper, a handfull of Fennel-ſeed an ounce of Fenugreek-roots, and two ounces of Honey; boil them in a pint of White-wine, and a quart of Stale beer, and give it faſting.

FINIS.

B L